DS4308/DS4308P DIGITAL SCANNER

PRODUCT REFERENCE GUIDE

DS4308/DS4308P DIGITAL SCANNER PRODUCT REFERENCE GUIDE

MN000327A01

Revision A

August 2014

Warranty

For the complete hardware product warranty statement, go to: http://www.motorolasolutions.com/warranty.

Revision History

Changes to the original guide are listed below:

Change	Date	Description
-01 Rev A	8/2014	Initial release

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 3: Maintenance & Technical Specifications

Chapter 4: User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options

Chapter 6: USB Interface

Chapter 7: SSI Interface

Chapter 10: Keyboard Wedge Interface

Chapter 11: Symbologies

ABOUT THIS GUIDE

Introduction

The *DS4308/DS4308P Product Reference Guide* provides general instructions for setting up, operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting the DS4308 series digital scanner.

Configurations

This guide includes the following DS4308 series digital scanner configurations:

- DS4308-SR00006ZZWW DS4308 Area Imager, Standard Range, Corded, Nova White
- DS4308-SR00007ZZWW DS4308 Area Imager, Standard Range, Corded, Twilight Black
- DS4308-DL00006ZZWW DS4308 Area Imager, Driver's License (DL) Parsing, Corded, Nova White
- DS4308-DL00007ZZWW DS4308 Area Imager, DL Parsing, Corded, Twilight Black
- DS4308-HD00007ZZWW DS4308 Area Imager, High Density, Corded, Twilight Black
- DS4308-HL00007ZZWW DS4308 Area Imager, High Density, DL Parsing, Corded, Twilight Black
- DS4308-HC0000BZZWW DS4308 Area Imager, Healthcare, Corded, HC White
- DS4308-HD00007ZCWW DS4308 Area Imager, High Density, Corded, Checkpoint EAS, Twilight Black
- DS4308-HL00007ZCWW DS4308 Area Imager, High Density, DL Parsing, Corded, Checkpoint EAS, Twilight Black
- DS4308P-SR00007PZWW DS4308 Area Imager with Integrated Presentation Stand, Standard Range, Corded, Twilight Black
- DS4308P-DL00007PZWW DS4308 Area Imager with Integrated Presentation Stand, DL Parsing, Corded, Twilight Black
- DS4308P-SR00007PCWW DS4308 Area Imager with Integrated Presentation Stand, Standard Range, Corded, Checkpoint EAS, Twilight Black
- DS4308P-DL00007PCWW DS4308 Area Imager with Integrated Presentation Stand, DL Parsing, Corded, Checkpoint EAS, Twilight Black

Chapter Descriptions

Topics covered in this guide are as follows:

- *Chapter 1, Getting Started* provides a product overview, unpacking instructions, and cable connection information.
- *Chapter 2, Data Capture* provides beeper and LED definitions, techniques involved in scanning bar codes, general instructions and tips about scanning, and decode ranges.
- *Chapter 3, Maintenance & Technical Specifications* provides suggested digital scanner maintenance, troubleshooting, technical specifications, and signal descriptions (pinouts).
- *Chapter 4, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options* describes each user preference feature and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.
- *Chapter 5, Imaging Preferences* describes imaging preference features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.
- *Chapter 6, USB Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with a USB host.
- *Chapter 7, SSI Interface* describes the system requirements of the Simple Serial Interface (SSI), which provides a communications link between Symbol Technologies decoders and a serial host.
- *Chapter 8, RS-232 Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with an RS-232 host.
- *Chapter 9, IBM 468X / 469X Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with an IBM 468X/469X host.
- *Chapter 10, Keyboard Wedge Interface* describes how to set up a keyboard wedge interface with the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 11, Symbologies* describes all symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features for the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 12, Intelligent Document Capture* describes IDC, an advanced image processing firmware, including IDC functionality, parameter bar codes to control its features, and a quick start procedure.
- *Chapter 13, OCR Programming* describes how to set up the digital scanner for OCR programming.
- *Chapter 14, Driver's License Set Up (DS4308-DL)* describes how to program the DS4308-DL digital scanner to read and use the data contained in the 2D bar codes on US driver's licenses and AAMVA compliant ID cards.
- *Chapter 15, 123Scan2* provides information on the PC-based digital scanner configuration tool 123Scan^2.
- *Chapter 16, Advanced Data Formatting* briefly describes ADF, a means of customizing data before transmission to the host device, and includes a reference to the *ADF Programmer Guide*.
- *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* provides a table of all host devices and miscellaneous scanner defaults.
- *Appendix B, Country Codes* provides bar codes for programming the country keyboard type for the USB keyboard (HID) device and the keyboard wedge host.
- *Appendix C, Country Code Pages* provides bar codes for selecting code pages for the country keyboard type.
- *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control* describes control parameters for Unicode/CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) bar code decode through USB HID Keyboard Emulation mode.

- *Appendix E, Programming Reference* provides a table of AIM code identifiers, ASCII character conversions, and keyboard maps.
- *Appendix F, Sample Bar Codes* includes sample bar codes of various code types.
- *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* includes the numeric bar codes to scan for parameters requiring specific numeric values.
- *Appendix H, ASCII Character Sets* provides ASCII character value tables.
- *Appendix I, Signature Capture Code* describes CapCode, a special pattern that encloses a signature area on a document and allows the scanner to capture a signature.

Notational Conventions

The following conventions are used in this document:

- Unless stated otherwise, **DS4308** refers to both the DS4308 and DS4308P configurations
- *Italics* are used to highlight the following:
  - Chapters and sections in this and related documents
  - Dialog box, window and screen names
  - Drop-down list and list box names
  - Check box and radio button names
- **Bold** text is used to highlight the following:
  - Key names on a keypad
  - Button names on a screen.
- bullets (•) indicate:
  - Action items
  - Lists of alternatives
  - Lists of required steps that are not necessarily sequential
- Sequential lists (e.g., those that describe step-by-step procedures) appear as numbered lists.
- Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) are used to denote default parameter settings.

Related Documents

- *DS4308 Series Quick Start Guide*, p/n MN000328A01 - provides general information for getting started with the DS4308 digital scanner, and includes basic set up and operation instructions.
- *DS4308P Series Quick Start Guide*, p/n MN000883A01 - provides general information for getting started with the DS4308P pedestal scanner, and includes basic set up and operation instructions.
- *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*, p/n 72E-69680-xx - provides information on ADF, a means of customizing data before transmission to a host.

For the latest version of this guide and all guides, go to: http://www.motorolasolutions.com/support.

Service Information

If you have a problem using the equipment, contact your facility's technical or systems support. If there is a problem with the equipment, they will contact the Customer Support Center at: http://www.motorolasolutions.com/support.

When contacting support, please have the following information available:

- Serial number of the unit
- Model number or product name
- Software type and version number

Symbol Technologies responds to calls by e-mail, telephone or fax within the time limits set forth in service agreements.

If your problem cannot be solved by support, you may need to return your equipment for servicing and will be given specific directions. Symbol Technologies is not responsible for any damages incurred during shipment if the approved shipping container is not used. Shipping the units improperly can possibly void the warranty.

If you purchased your business product from a Symbol Technologies business partner, please contact that business partner for support.

CHAPTER 1 GETTING STARTED

Introduction

The DS4308 and DS4308P combine superior 1D and 2D omnidirectional bar code scanning and transfer with a light-weight, hands-free/hand-held design. The digital scanner's gooseneck Intellistand seamlessly accommodates both counter-top and hand-held use. Whether in hands-free (presentation) or hand-held mode, the digital scanner ensures comfort and ease of use for extended periods of time.

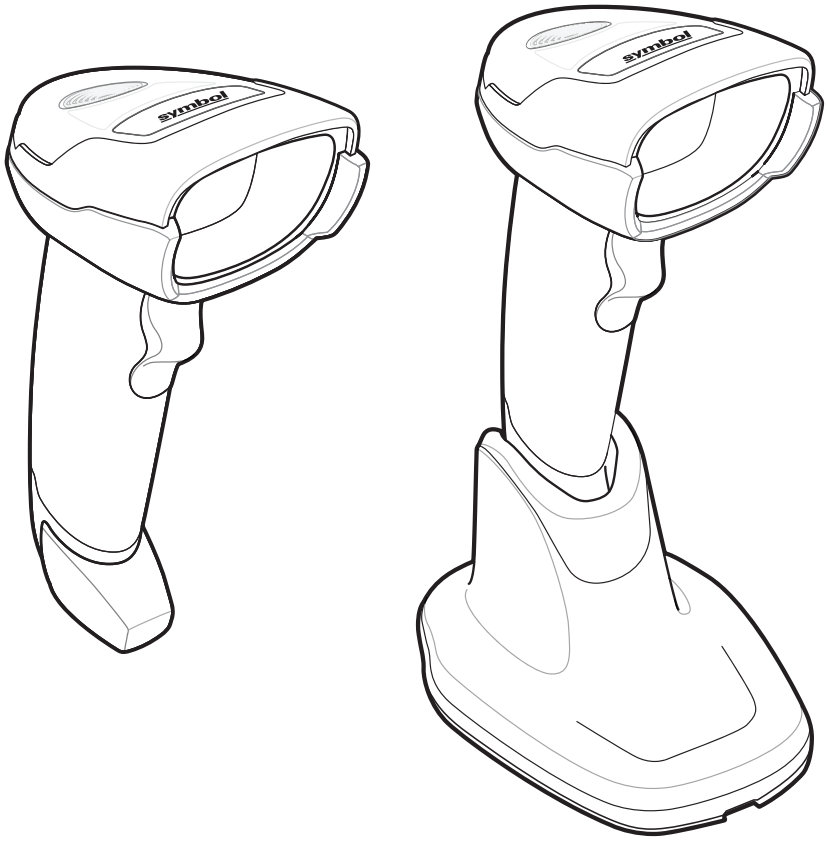


Figure 1-1 *DS4308 and DS4308P Digital Scanner*

Interfaces

The DS4308 digital scanner supports:

- USB connection to a host. The digital scanner autodetects a USB host and defaults to the HID keyboard interface type. Select other USB interface types by scanning programming bar code menus.This interface supports the following international keyboards (for Windows® environment): North America, German, French, French Canadian, Spanish, Italian, Swedish, UK English, Portuguese-Brazilian, and Japanese.
- Standard RS-232 connection to a host. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the host.
- Connection to IBM 468X/469X hosts. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the IBM terminal.
- Keyboard Wedge connection to a host. The host interprets scanned data as keystrokes. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the host. This interface supports the following international keyboards (for Windows® environment): North America, German, French International, French Canadian, French Belgian, Spanish, Italian, Swedish, UK English, Brazilian-Portuguese and Japanese.
- Configuration via 123Scan^2.

Unpacking

Remove the digital scanner from its packing and inspect it for damage. If the scanner was damaged in transit, contact support. See *page xx* for information. **KEEP THE PACKING**. It is the approved shipping container; use this to return the equipment for servicing.

Setting Up the Digital Scanner

Installing the Interface Cable

1. Insert the interface cable modular connector into the interface cable port on the rear of the digital scanner until you hear a click. For the DS4308P, tip the scanner forward in its base to best access the port. Low/medium/high beeps sound, indicating the scanner is operational.

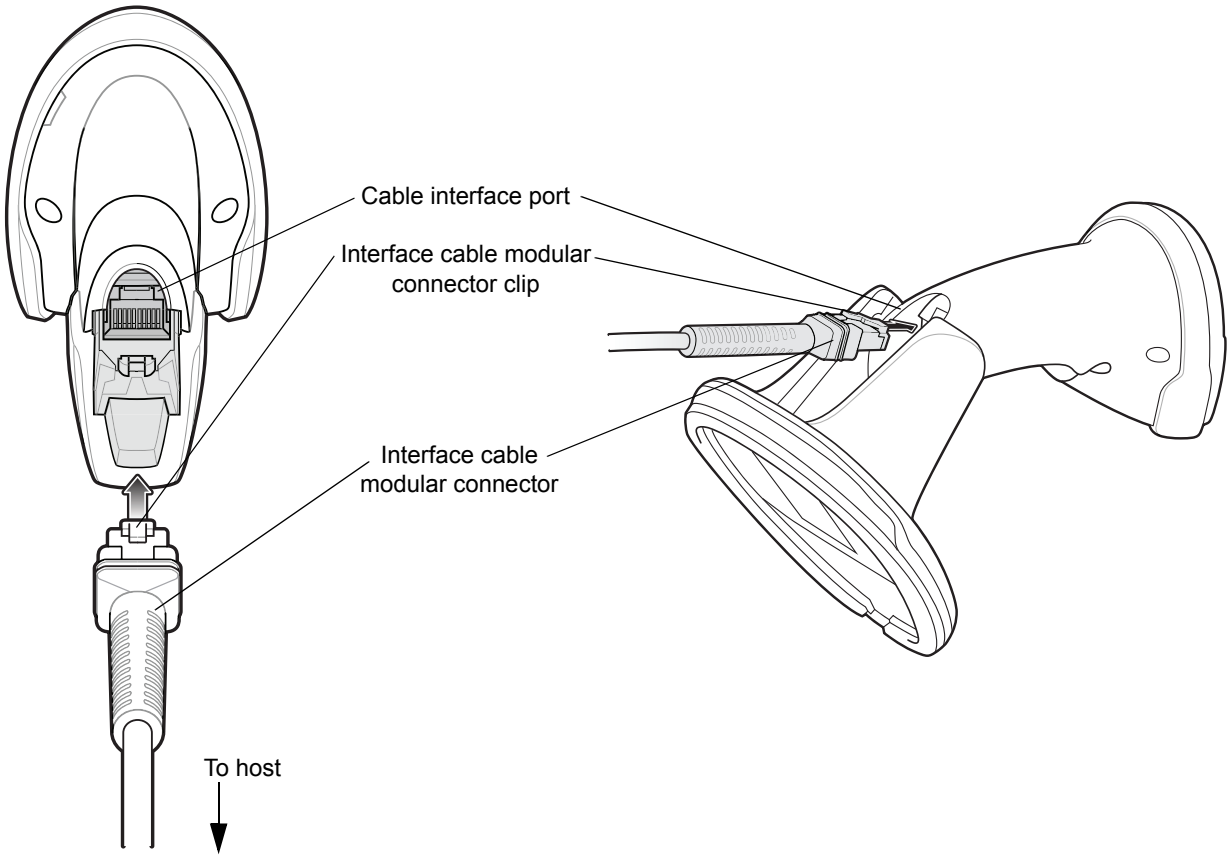


Figure 1-2 *Installing the Cable - DS4308 and DS4308P*

IMPORTANT Insert the cable into the cable interface port until a click sounds.

When connecting the DS4308 using a USB cable, a shielded connector cable is required (e.g., p/n CBA-U21-S07ZAR). If upgrading an LS2208 or LS4208 to a DS4308, use the shielded connector cable.

2. Gently tug the cable to ensure the connector is secure.
3. Connect the other end of the interface cable to the host (see the specific host chapter for information on host connections).

Removing the Interface Cable

1. Press the cable's modular connector clip through the access slot in the digital scanner's base. For the DS4308P, tip the scanner forward in its base to best access the slot.

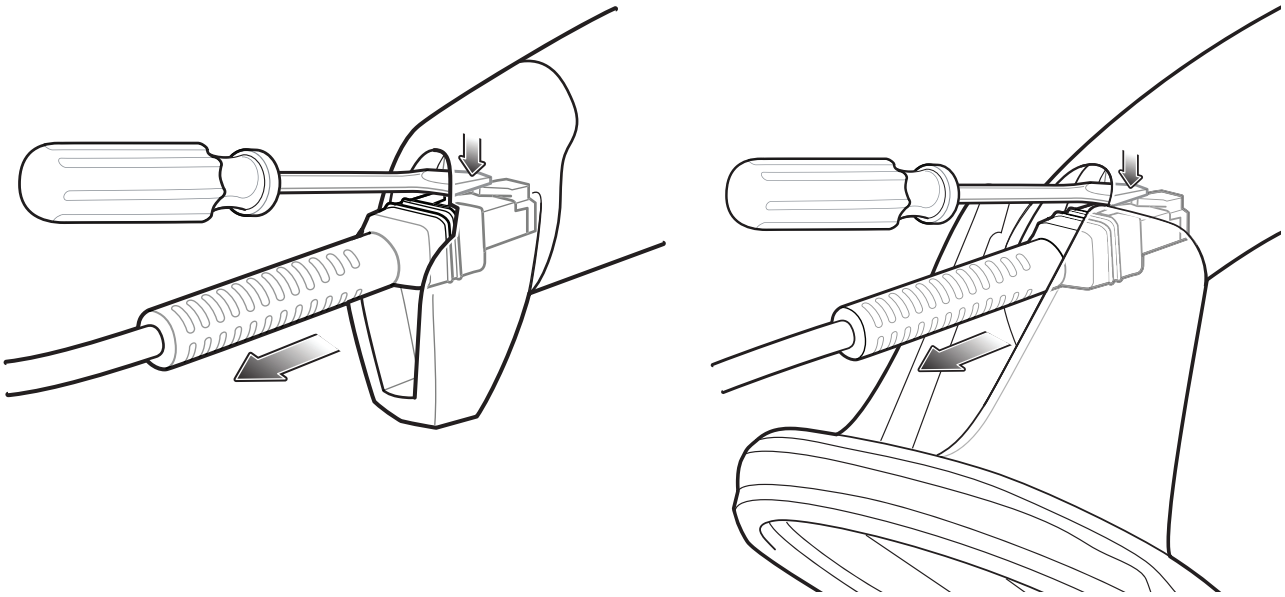


Figure 1-3 *Removing the Cable - DS4308 and DS4308P*

2. Carefully slide out the cable.
3. Follow the steps for *Installing the Interface Cable* to connect a new cable.

Connecting Power (if required)

If the host does not provide power to the digital scanner, connect an external power supply.

1. Plug the power supply into the power jack on the interface cable.
2. Plug the other end of the power supply into an AC outlet.

Configuring the Digital Scanner

To configure the digital scanner use the bar codes included in this manual, or use the 123Scan^2 configuration program. See *Chapter 4, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options*, and *Chapter 11, Symbologies* for information about programming the digital scanner using bar code menus. See *Chapter 15, 123Scan2* for information on using this configuration program. Also see each host-specific chapter to set up connection to a specific host type.

Accessories

The digital scanner ships with the *DS4308 Quick Start Guide*. The following required accessories must be ordered:

- Interface cable for the appropriate interface.
- Shielded connector cable (e.g., p/n CBA-U21-S07ZAR) when connecting via USB. Refer to Solution Builder for guidance about cables.

NOTE If upgrading an LS2208 or LS4208 to a DS4308, the shielded connector cable must be used.

- Universal power supply, if the interface requires this.
- Gooseneck Intellistand for hands-free operation of the DS4308.
- Wall/table mount bracket for mounting the DS4308P.

For additional items, contact a local Symbol Technologies representative or business partner.

CHAPTER 2 DATA CAPTURE

Introduction

This chapter provides beeper and LED definitions, techniques involved in scanning bar codes, general instructions and tips about scanning, and decode ranges.

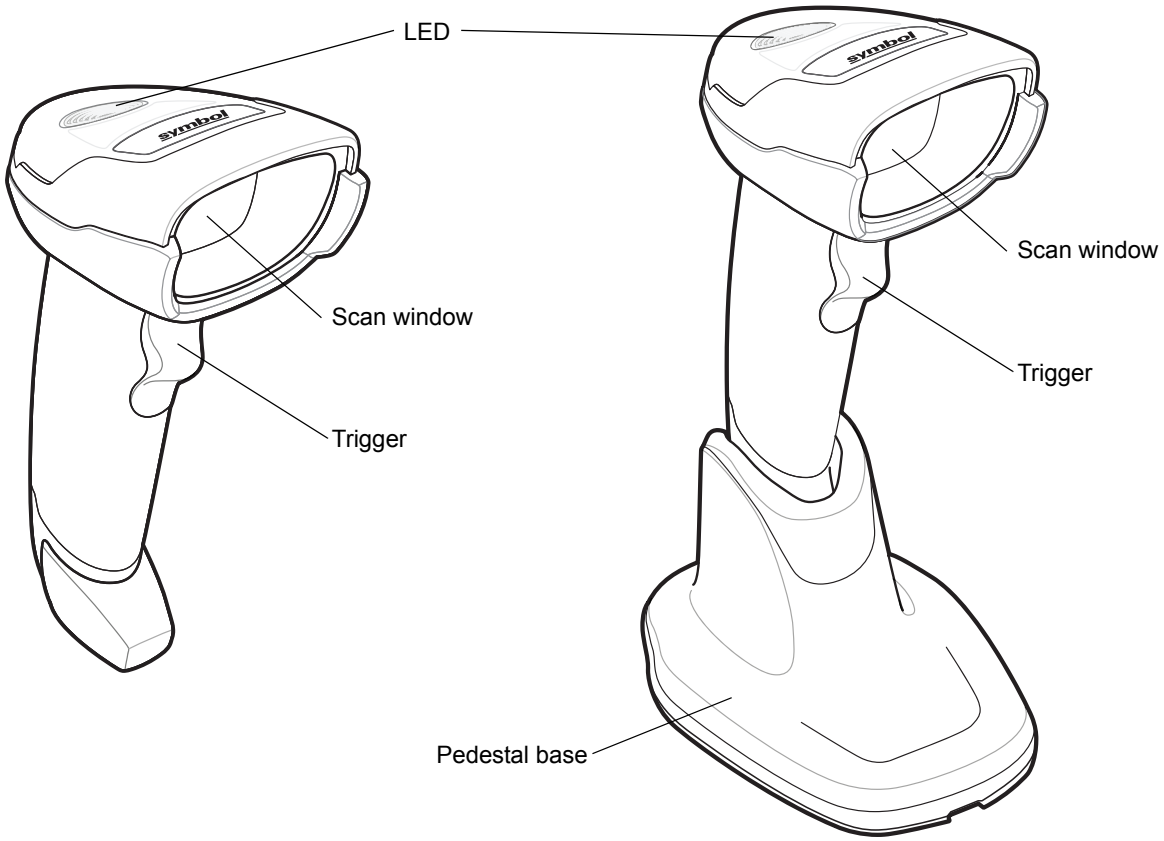


Figure 2-1 *Parts of the DS4308 and DS4308P*

Beeper Definitions

The digital scanner issues different beep sequences and patterns to indicate status. *Table 2-1* defines beep sequences that occur during both normal scanning and while programming the digital scanner.

Table 2-1 *Beeper Definitions*

Beeper Sequence	Indication
Standard Use	
Low/medium/high beeps	Power up.
Short beep, tone programmable	A bar code symbol was decoded (if decode beeper is enabled).
4 long low beeps	Transmission error.
5 low beeps	Conversion or format error.
Low/low/low/extra low beeps	RS-232 receive error.
High beep	The digital scanner detected a <BEL> character over RS-232.
Parameter Menu Scanning	
Low/high beeps	Input error; incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or **Cancel** scanned.
High/low beeps	Keyboard parameter selected. Enter value using numeric bar codes.
High/low/high/low beeps	Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
ADF Programming	
Low/low beeps	Enter another alphabetic character or scan the **End of Message** bar code.
Low/high/high beeps	All rules are deleted.
Low/high/low/high beeps	Out of rule memory. Erase some existing rules, then try to save rule again.
Low/high/low beeps	Cancel rule entry. Rule entry mode exited because of an error or the user asked to exit rule entry.
Low/high beeps	Entry error, wrong bar code scanned, or criteria/action list is too long for a rule. Re-enter criterion or action.
Low beep	Delete last saved rule. The current rule is left intact.
High/high beeps	ADF criteria or action is expected. Enter another criterion or action, or scan the **Save Rule** bar code.
High/low/low beeps	All criteria or actions cleared for current rule, continue entering rule.
High/low/high/low beeps	Rule saved. Rule entry mode exited.
Code 39 Buffering	
Low/high/low beeps	The Code 39 buffer was erased or there was an attempt to clear or transmit an empty buffer.
High/low beeps	New Code 39 data was entered into the buffer.
3 long high beeps	Code 39 buffer is full.

Table 2-1 *Beeper Definitions (Continued)*

Beeper Sequence	Indication
High/low/high beeps	The Code 39 buffer was erased.
Low/high beeps	A successful transmission of buffered data.
Macro PDF	
2 low beeps	MPDF sequence buffered.
2 long low beeps	File ID error. A bar code not in the current MPDF sequence was scanned.
3 long low beeps	Out of memory. There is not enough buffer space to store the current MPDF symbol.
4 long low beeps	Bad symbology. Scanned a 1D or 2D bar code in a MPDF sequence, a duplicate MPDF label, a label in an incorrect order, or trying to transmit an empty or illegal MPDF field.
5 long low beeps	Flushing MPDF buffer.
Low/high beeps	Flushing an already empty MPDF buffer.
Fast warble beep	Aborting MPDF sequence.
Host Specific	
USB only	
Low/medium/high beeps upon scanning a USB device type	Communication with the host must be established before the digital scanner can operate at the highest power level.
Low/medium/high beeps occur more than once	The USB host can put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once. This is normal and usually happens when the PC cold boots.
RS-232 only	
1 short high beep	A <BEL> character is received and Beep on <BEL> is enabled.

LED Definitions

In addition to beep sequences, the digital scanner uses a two-color LED to indicate status. *Table 2-2* defines LED colors that display during scanning.

Table 2-2 *Standard LED Definitions*

LED	Indication
Hand-Held Scanning Standard Use	
Green	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is on and ready to scan.
Hands-Free (Presentation) Scanning Standard Use	
Green	The scanner is on and ready to scan.
Momentarily Off	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is in low power mode.
Parameter Programming	
Green	Number expected. Enter value using numeric bar codes. Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
Red	Input error: incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or Cancel scanned.
Firmware Update	
Red, alternating between solid and fast blinking	Firmware download is completing (user should wait for this indicator to complete before using the scanner). This indicator is followed by a low/medium/high power up beep.
ADF Programming	
Green	Enter another digit. Add leading zeros to the front if necessary. Enter another alphabetic character or scan the **End of Message** bar code. All criteria or actions cleared for current rule, continue entering rule. Delete last saved rule. The current rule is left intact. All rules deleted.
Blinking Green	Enter another criterion or action, or scan the **Save Rule** bar code.
Green after Blinking	Rule saved. Rule entry mode exited. Cancel rule entry. Rule entry mode exited because of an error or the user asked to exit rule entry.
Red	Out of rule memory. Erase some existing rules, then try to save rule again. Entry error, wrong bar code scanned, or criteria/action list is too long for a rule. Re-enter criterion or action.

Scanning

The DS4308 digital scanner is in hands-free (presentation) mode when it is placed in the gooseneck Intellistand. The DS4308P is in hands-free (presentation) mode when it is placed on the countertop. In this mode, the digital scanner operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view.

When the digital scanner is not used for a user-definable period of time, it enters a low power mode in which the LEDs are turned off or illumination blinks at a low duty cycle until the digital scanner detects an image change (e.g. motion).

Scanning in Hands-Free (Presentation) Mode - DS4308

The optional stand adds greater flexibility to DS4308 scanning operation. When the scanner is seated in the stand's "cup," the scanner's built-in sensor places the scanner in hands-free (presentation) mode. When the scanner is removed from the stand, it automatically switches to its programmed hand-held triggered mode.

Assemble the Stand

To assemble the stand:

1. Unscrew the wing nut from the bottom of the one piece scanner "cup."

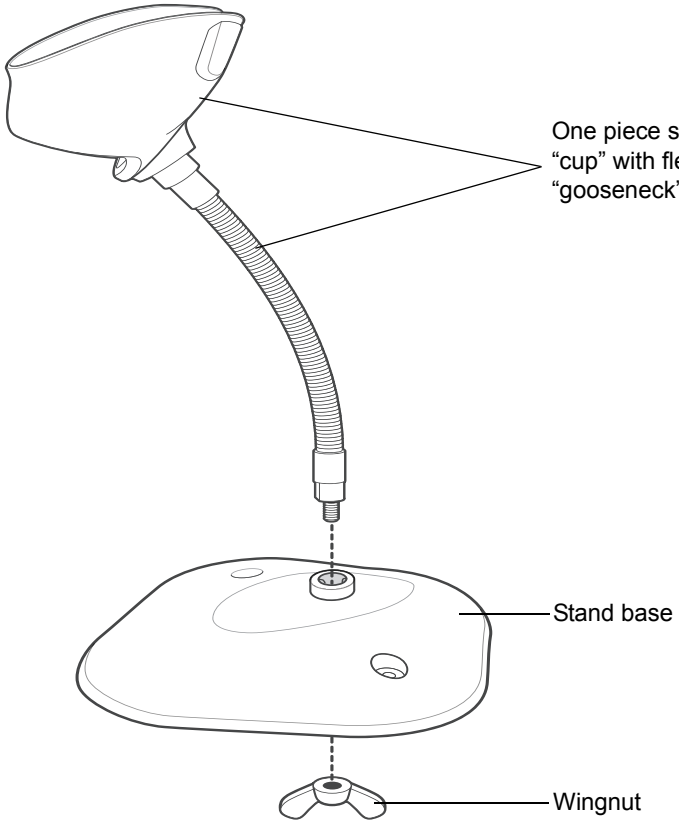


Figure 2-2 *Assembling the Stand*

2. Fit the bottom of the gooseneck piece into the opening on the top of the stand base.
3. Tighten the wing nut underneath the base to secure the cup and neck piece to the base.
4. Bend the neck to the desired position for scanning.

Mounting the Stand (optional)

You can attach the base of the scanner's stand to a flat surface using two screws or double-sided tape (not provided).

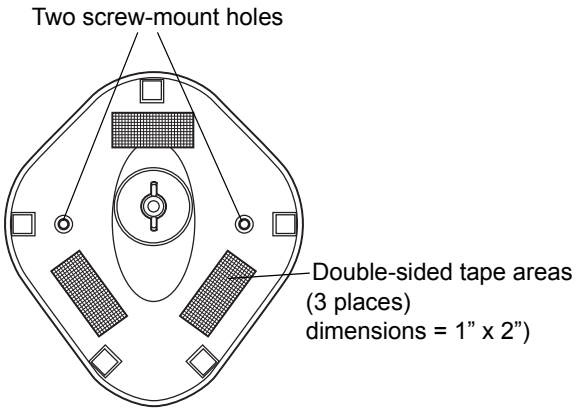


Figure 2-3 *Mounting the Stand*

Screw Mount

1. Position the assembled base on a flat surface.
2. Screw one #10 wood screw into each screw-mount hole until the base of the stand is secure (see *Figure 2-3*).

Tape Mount

1. Peel the paper liner off one side of each piece of tape and place the sticky surface over each of the three rectangular tape holders.
2. Peel the paper liner off the exposed sides of each piece of tape and press the stand on a flat surface until it is secure (see *Figure 2-3*).

Scanning with the Stand

When the digital scanner is placed in the gooseneck Intellistand it operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view.

To operate the scanner in the stand:

1. Ensure the scanner is properly connected to the host (see the appropriate host chapter for information on host connections).
2. Insert the scanner in the gooseneck Intellistand by placing the front of the scanner into the stand's "cup."

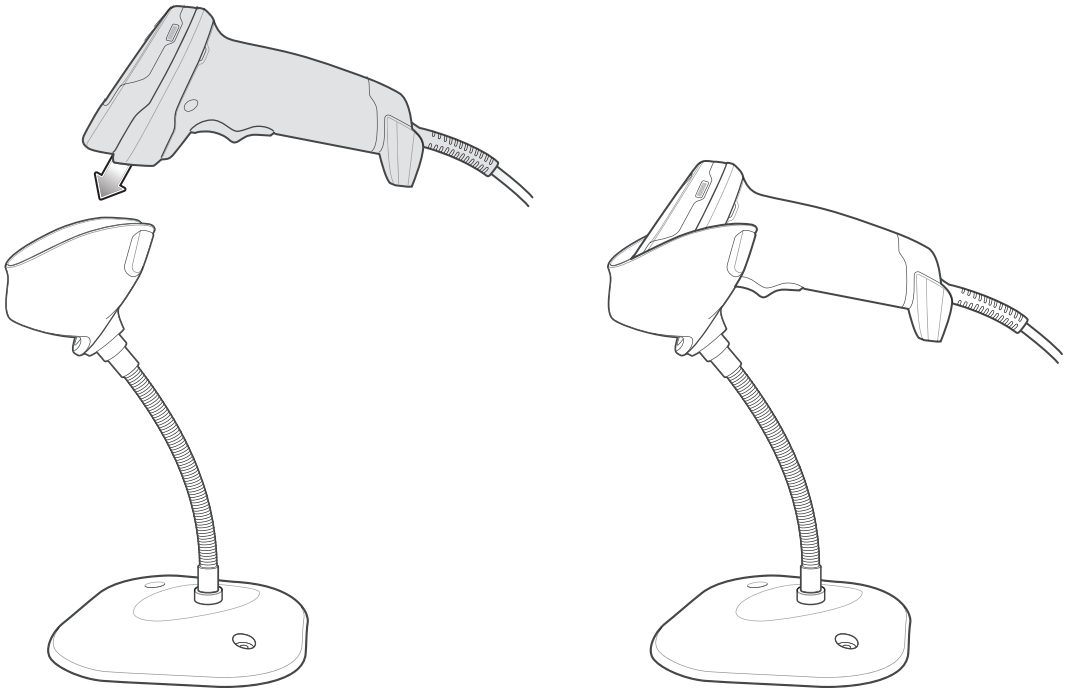


Figure 2-4 *Inserting the Scanner in the Gooseneck Intellistan*d

3. Adjust the scan angle by bending the stand's flexible "gooseneck" body.
4. Present the bar code. Upon successful decode, the scanner beeps and the LED momentarily shuts off. For more information about beeper and LED definitions, see *Table 2-1* and *Table 2-2*.

Scanning in Hands-Free (Presentation) Mode - DS4308P

Placing the DS4308P on the countertop or in the optional wall mount puts the scanner in hands-free (presentation) mode. It operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view. Lifting the scanner places it in its programmed hand-held triggered mode.

DS4308P Wall Mounting

The optional wall mount allows mounting the DS4308P to a wall for scanning. Place the mount at the desired location and secure with two screws (not provided).

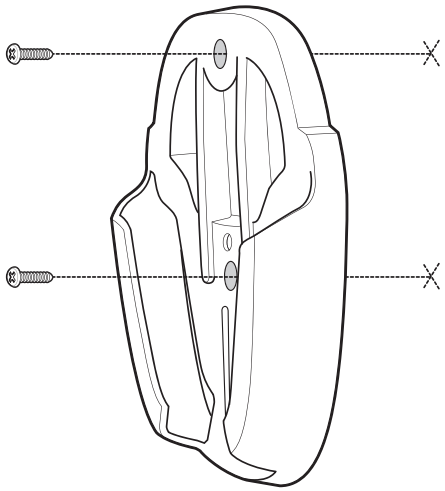


Figure 2-5 *Mounting the DS4308P Wall Mount*

Slide the base of the DS4308P into the stand

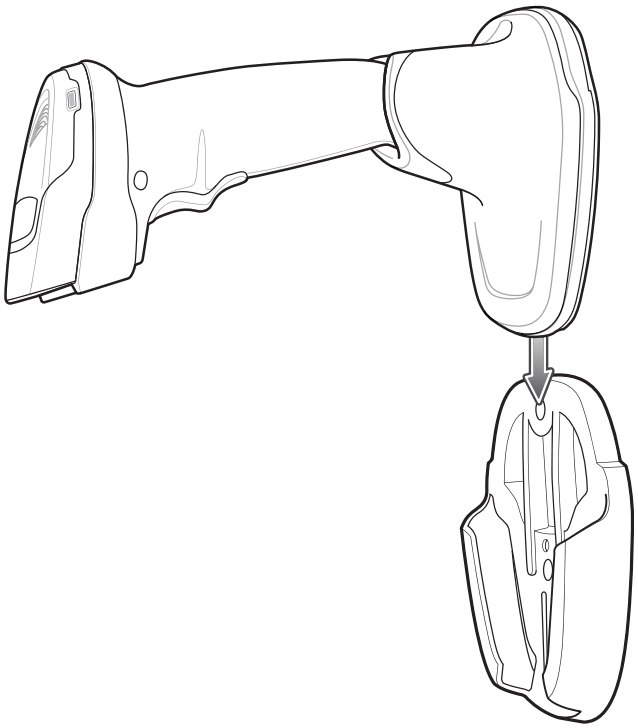


Figure 2-6 *Inserting the DS4308P into the Wall Mount*

DS4308P Hands-Free Scanning

To operate the DS4308P in hands-free mode:

1. Ensure the scanner is properly connected to the host (see the appropriate host chapter for information on host connections).
2. Place the scanner on the countertop or in the optional wall mount.
3. Adjust the scan angle by swiveling the scanner forward or backward in its base.

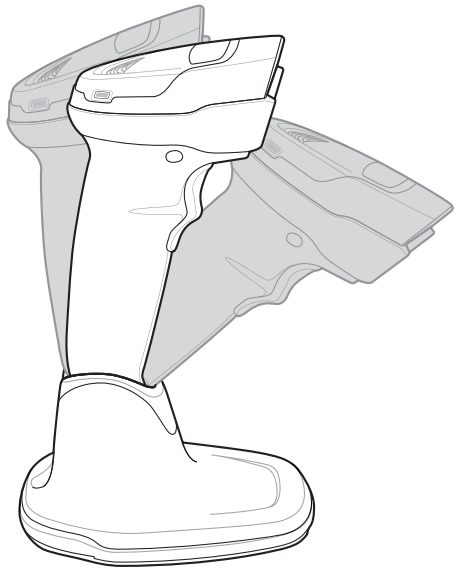


Figure 2-7 *Adjusting the DS4308P*

4. Present the bar code to the scanner. The scanner turns on illumination. Upon successful decode, the scanner beeps and the LED momentarily shuts off. For more information about beeper and LED definitions, see *Table 2-1* and *Table 2-2*.

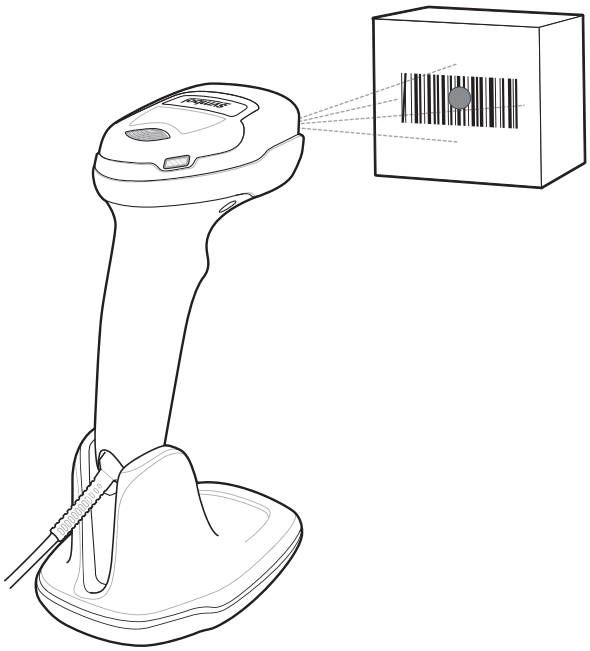


Figure 2-8 *Scanning with the DS4308P*

Scanning in Hand-Held Mode

Pick up the digital scanner. The aiming dot displays.

1. Ensure the aiming dot is centered on the bar code. See *Aiming* below.

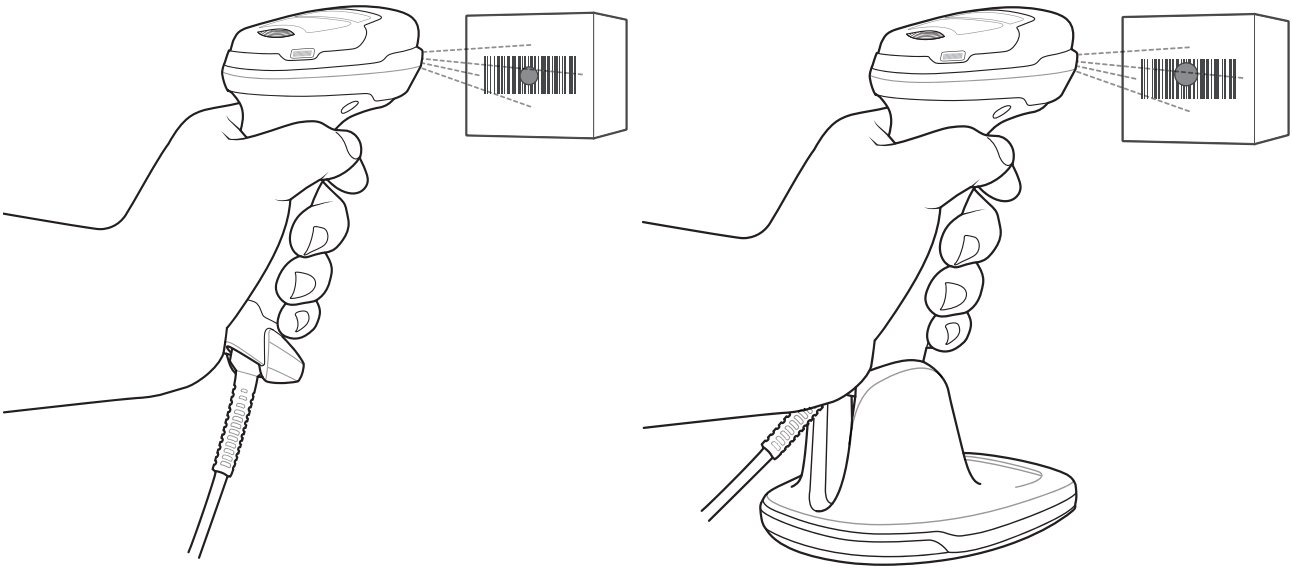


Figure 2-9 *Centering the Aiming Dot on the Bar Code - DS4308 and DS4308P*

2. Press and hold the trigger until either:
   a. The digital scanner reads the bar code. The digital scanner beeps, the LED flashes, and the aiming dot turns off.

      Or

   b. The digital scanner does not read the bar code and the aiming dot turns off.
3. Release the trigger.

Aiming

When scanning, the digital scanner projects a red LED dot which allows positioning the bar code within its field of view. See *Decode Ranges on page 2-12* for the proper distance to achieve between the digital scanner and a bar code.

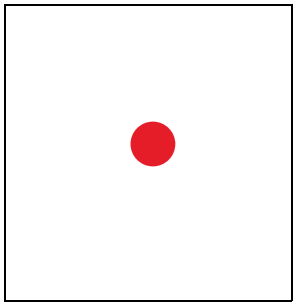


Figure 2-10 *Aiming Dot*

If necessary, the digital scanner turns on its red illumination LEDs to illuminate the target bar code.

To scan a barcode, center the symbol and ensure the entire symbol is within the rectangular area formed by the illumination LEDs.

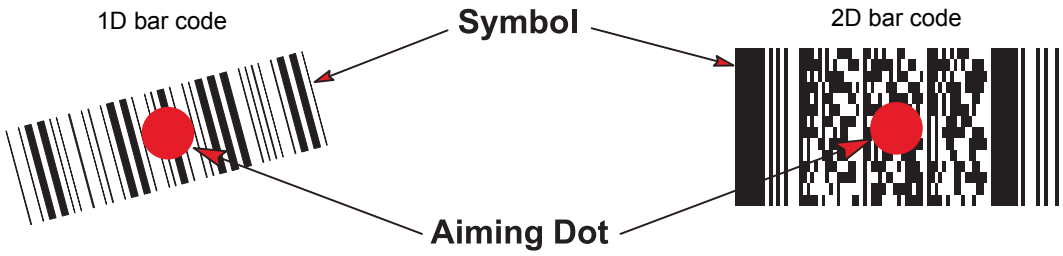


Figure 2-11 *Scanning Orientation with Aiming Dot*

The digital scanner can also read a bar code presented within the aiming dot not centered. The top examples in *Figure 2-12* show acceptable aiming options, while the bottom examples can not be decoded.

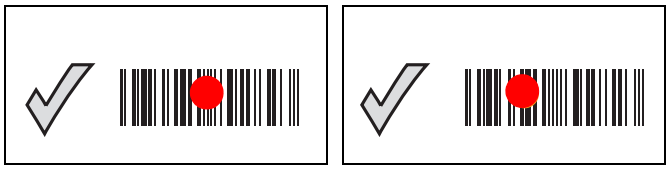


Figure 2-12 *Acceptable Aiming*

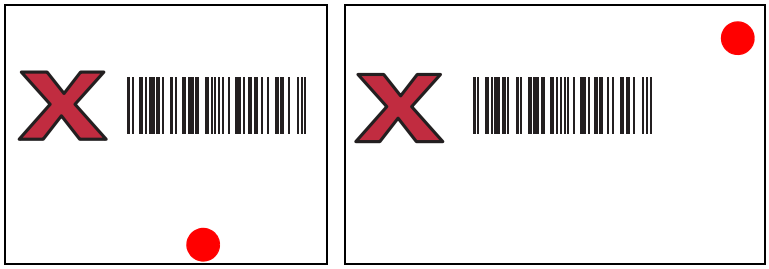


Figure 2-13 *Incorrect Aiming*

The aiming dot is smaller when the digital scanner is closer to the symbol and larger when it is farther from the symbol. Scan symbols with smaller bars or elements (mil size) closer to the digital scanner, and those with larger bars or elements (mil size) farther from the digital scanner.

The digital scanner beeps to indicate that it successfully decoded the bar code. For more information on beeper and LED definitions, see *Table 2-1* and *Table 2-2*.

Decode Ranges

Table 2-3 *DS4308 Decode Ranges*

Bar Code Type	Symbol Density	DS4308-SR Typical Working Ranges		DS4308-HD Typical Working Ranges	
		Near	Far	Near	Far
Code 128	3.0 mil	N/A	N/A	1.0 in / 2.5 cm	3.0 in / 7.6 cm
Code 39	3.0 mil	1.5 in / 3.8 cm	5.4 in / 13.7 cm	0.5 in / 1.3 cm	5.8 in / 14.6 cm
	5.0 mil	0.0 in / 0.0 cm	11.0 in / 27.9 cm	0.0 in / 0.0 cm	10.0 in / 25.4 cm
	20.0 mil	0.0 in / 0.0 cm	53.0 in / 134.6 cm	0.0 in / 0.0 cm	30.0 in / 76.2 cm
100% UPC	13.0 mil	0.0 in / 0.0 cm	28.0 in / 71.1 cm	0.0 in / 0.0 cm	16.5 in / 41.9 cm
PDF 417	6.6 mil	1.1 in / 2.8 cm	8.0 in / 20.3 cm	0.2 in / 0.5 cm	7.8 in / 19.7 cm
MicroPDF	4.0 mil	N/A	N/A	1.0 in / 2.5 cm	4.7 in / 11.9 cm
Data Matrix	5 mil	N/A	N/A	1.2 in / 3.0 cm	3.5 in / 8.9 cm
	7.5 mil	N/A	N/A	1.0 in / 2.5 cm	6.5 in / 16.5 cm
	10.0 mil	2.0 in / 5.1 cm	9.0 in / 22.9 cm	0.8 in / 1.9 cm	8.2 in / 20.8 cm
QR Code	10.0 mil	1.1 in / 2.8 cm	8.5 in / 21.6 cm	0.0 in / 0.0 cm	7.0 in / 17.8 cm
	20.0 mil	0.9 in / 2.3 cm	16.2 in / 41.1 cm	0.5 in / 1.3 cm	11.0 in / 27.9 cm

CHAPTER 3 MAINTENANCE & TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Introduction

This chapter provides suggested digital scanner maintenance, troubleshooting, technical specifications, and signal descriptions (pinouts).

Maintenance

General Scanner Maintenance

Cleaning the scan window is required. A dirty window can affect scanning accuracy.

- Do not allow abrasive material to touch the window.
- Remove any dirt particles with a damp cloth.
- Wipe the window using a tissue moistened with approved cleanser (listed below).
- Do not spray water or other cleaning liquids directly into the window.

In addition to the cleaning requirements above, healthcare configurations of the scanner (DS4308-HC) may require additional maintenance.

Healthcare Scanner Maintenance

The DS4308-HC design allows safe cleansing of the product plastics with a variety of cleaning products and disinfectants. If required, wipe the digital scanner with the following list of approved cleansers:

- Isopropyl alcohol
- Bleach/sodium hypochlorite
- Hydrogen peroxide
- Gentle dish soap and water

IMPORTANT Cleansers that contain active ingredients not listed above should not be utilized on the DS4308-HC digital scanner.

Daily Cleaning and Disinfecting

Following are the cleaning and disinfecting instructions for environments that require daily or more frequent cleaning to prevent the spread of germs, including healthcare workers who need to disinfect their scanner after each patient visit and retail and other shift workers who share devices.

1. Dampen a soft cloth with one of the approved cleaning agents listed above or use pre-moistened wipes.
2. Gently wipe all surfaces, including the front, back, sides, top and bottom. Never apply liquid directly to the scanner. Be careful not to let liquid pool around the scanner window, trigger, cable connector or any other area on the device.
3. Be sure to clean the trigger and in between the trigger and the housing (use a cotton-tipped applicator to reach tight or inaccessible areas).
4. Immediately dry the scanner window after cleaning with a soft non-abrasive cloth to prevent streaking.
5. Allow the unit to air dry before use.

Monthly 'Deep Cleaning' Maintenance

Keep your scanner in good working order with a regular comprehensive cleaning routine to remove the natural build-up of dirt that occurs with everyday use on connectors and the scanner exit window as well as, the main surfaces of the device.

1. Housing: Follow the instructions for daily cleaning and disinfecting above to give the housing a general cleaning.
2. Scanner window: Wipe the scanner window with a lens tissue or other material suitable for cleaning optical material such as eyeglasses.
3. Scanner connector:
    a. Dip the cotton portion of a cotton-tipped applicator in isopropyl alcohol.
    b. Rub the cotton portion of the cotton-tipped applicator back-and-forth across the connector on the scanner. Do not leave any cotton residue on the connector.
    c. Repeat at least 3 times.
    d. Use the cotton-tipped applicator dipped in alcohol to remove any grease and dirt near the connector area.
    e. Use a dry cotton tipped applicator and repeat steps c, d and e (do not apply alcohol as directed in any of these steps).

Troubleshooting

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
The aiming pattern does not appear when pressing the trigger.	No power to the digital scanner.	If the configuration requires a power supply, re-connect the power supply.
	Incorrect host interface cable is used.	Connect the correct host interface cable.
	Interface/power cables are loose.	Re-connect cables.
	Digital scanner is disabled.	For IBM 468x and USB IBM hand-held, IBM table top, and OPOS modes, enable the digital scanner via the host interface. Otherwise, see the technical person in charge of scanning.
	If using RS-232 Nixdorf B mode, CTS is not asserted.	Assert CTS line.
	Aiming pattern is disabled.	Enable the aiming pattern. See *Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on page 4-21*.
Digital scanner emits aiming pattern, but does not decode the bar code.	Digital scanner is not programmed for the correct bar code type.	Program the digital scanner to read that type of bar code. See *Chapter 11, Symbologies*.
	Bar code symbol is unreadable.	Scan test symbols of the same bar code type to determine if the bar code is defaced.
	The symbol is not completely inside aiming pattern.	Move the symbol completely within the aiming pattern. Move the symbol completely within the field of view (AIM pattern does NOT define FOV)
	Distance between digital scanner and bar code is incorrect.	Move the scanner closer to or further from the bar code. See *Decode Ranges on page 2-12*.

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting (Continued)*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Digital scanner decodes bar code, but does not transmit the data to the host.	Digital scanner is not programmed for the correct host type.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code. See the chapter corresponding to the host type.
	Interface cable is loose.	Re-connect the cable.
	If the digital scanner emits 4 long low beeps, a transmission error occurred. This occurs if a unit is not properly configured or connected to the wrong host type.	Set the scanner's communication parameters to match the host's setting.
	If the digital scanner emits 5 low beeps, a conversion or format error occurred.	Configure the digital scanner's conversion parameters properly.
	If the digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps, it detected an invalid ADF rule.	Program the correct ADF rules. Refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide.*
	If the digital scanner emits high/low beeps, the scanner is buffering Code 39 data.	Normal scanning a Code 39 bar code and the Code 39 Buffering option is enabled.
Host displays scanned data incorrectly.	Digital scanner is not programmed to work with the host.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code.
		For RS-232, set the digital scanner's communication parameters to match the host's settings.
		For a Keyboard Wedge configuration, program the system for the correct keyboard type, and turn off the CAPS LOCK key.
		Program the proper editing options (e.g., UPC-E to UPC-A Conversion).
Digital scanner emits short low/short medium/short high beep sequence (power-up beep sequence) more than once.	The USB bus may put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once.	Normal during host reset.
Digital scanner emits 4 short high beeps during decode attempt.	Digital scanner has not completed USB initialization.	Wait several seconds and scan again.
Digital scanner emits Low/low/low/extra low beeps when not in use.	RS-232 receive error.	Normal during host reset. Otherwise, set the digital scanner's RS-232 parity to match the host setting.

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting (Continued)*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Digital scanner emits low/high beeps during programming.	Input error, incorrect bar code or **Cancel** bar code was scanned.	Scan the correct numeric bar codes within range for the parameter programmed.
Digital scanner emits low/high/low/high beeps during programming.	Out of host parameter storage space.	Scan *Default Parameters on page 4-5*.
	Out of memory for ADF rules.	Reduce the number of ADF rules or the number of steps in the ADF rules.
	During programming, indicates out of ADF parameter storage space.	Erase all rules and re-program with shorter rules.
Digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps.	Clearing Code 39 buffer.	Normal when scanning the Code 39 Buffering **Clear Buffer** bar code or upon attempt to transmit an empty Code 39 buffer.
	ADF transmit error.	Refer to the Advanced Data Formatting Guide for information.
	Invalid ADF rule is detected.	Refer to the Advanced Data Formatting Guide for information.
Digital scanner emits a power-up beep after changing USB host type.	The USB bus re-established power to the digital scanner.	Normal when changing USB host type.
Digital scanner emits one high beep when not in use.	In RS-232 mode, a <BEL> character was received and Beep on <BEL> option is enabled.	Normal when **Beep on <BEL>** is enabled and the digital scanner is in RS-232 mode.
Digital scanner emits frequent beeps.	No power to the scanner.	Check the system power. If the configuration requires a power supply, re-connect the power supply.
	Incorrect host interface cable is used.	Verify that the correct host interface cable is used. If not, connect the correct host interface cable.
	Interface/power cables are loose.	Check for loose cable connections and re-connect cables.

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting (Continued)*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Digital scanner emits five long low beeps after a bar code is decoded.	Conversion or format error was detected. The scanner's conversion parameters are not properly configured.	Ensure the scanner's conversion parameters are properly configured.
	Conversion or format error was detected. An ADF rule was set up with characters that can't be sent for the host selected.	Change the ADF rule, or change to a host that can support the ADF rule.
	Conversion or format error was detected. A bar code was scanned with characters that can't be sent for that host.	Change the bar code, or change to a host that can support the bar code.

NOTE If after performing these checks the digital scanner still experiences problems, contact the distributor or call Symbol Technologies support.

Report Software Version Bar Code

When contacting Symbol Technologies support, a support representative may ask you to scan the bar code below to determine the version of software installed in the digital scanner.

Report Software Version

Technical Specifications

Table 3-2 *Technical Specifications*

Item	Description
Physical Characteristics	
Dimensions DS4308 DS4308P	 6.48 in. H x 3.86 in. L x 2.64 in. W (16.5 cm H x 9.8 cm L x 6.7 cm W) 8.15 in. H x 5.18 in. L x 3.74 in. W (20.7 cm H x 13.15 cm L x 9.5 cm W)
Weight (without cable) DS4308 DS4308P	 5.71 oz. (162 g) 10.6 oz. (300 g)
Power	5 VDC +/- 10% @ 360 mA (RMS typical)
Performance Characteristics	
Light Source	Aiming pattern: 617 nm LED Illumination: 660 nm LEDs
Field of View (Vertical x Horizontal)	36º (H) x 22.5º (V)
Roll Pitch Yaw	0 - 360º +/- 65º or greater +/- 60º or greater
Symbology Decode Capability	
1D	UPC/EAN, UPC/EAN with supplementals, Bookland EAN, ISSN, UCC Coupon Extended Code, Code 128, GS1-128, ISBT 128, ISBT Concatenation, Code 39, Code 39 Full ASCII, Trioptic Code 39, Code 32, Code 93, Code 11, Interleaved 2 of 5, Discrete 2 of 5, Codabar, MSI, Chinese 2 of 5, Matrix 2 of 5, Korean 3 of 5, GS1 DataBar variants
2D	PDF417, MicroPDF417, Composite Codes, TLC-39, Data Matrix, Maxicode, QR Code, MicroQR, Aztec, Han Xin
Postal	US Postnet, US Planet, UK Postal, Japan Post, Australia Post, Royal Mail 4 State Customer, KIX Code (Dutch), UPU 4 State Postal FICS (Post US4), USPS 4 State Postal (Post US3)
Typical Working Distance	See *Decode Ranges on page 2-12*.
Motion Tolerances	Up to 30 in. (76.2) cm per second

Table 3-2 *Technical Specifications (Continued)*

Item	Description
Interfaces Supported	USB, RS-232, RS-485 (IBM 46xx), keyboard wedge, SSI The scanner supports the following protocols over USB: HID Keyboard (default mode), SNAPI, COM Port Emulation, IBM SurePOS (Yellowstone) (IBM Handheld, IBM Tabletop, OPOS), USB CDC, SSI over USB CDC The scanner supports the following protocols over RS232: Standard, Wincor-Nixdorf, ICL, Fujitsu, Olivetti, Omron, CUTE
Minimum Resolution	Standard Range (SR) Configuration Code 39 4 mil UPC 60% 7.8 mil PDF417 5 mil Data Matrix 7.5 mil High Density (HD) Configuration Code 39 3 mil UPC 60% 7.8 mil PDF417 4 mil Data Matrix 5 mil
User Environment	
Operating Temperature	32º F to 122º F (0º C to 50º C)
Storage Temperature	-40º F to 158º F (-40º C to 70º C)
Humidity	5% to 95%, non-condensing
Drop Specifications DS4308 DS4308P	 Withstands multiple 6 ft. (1.8 m) drops to concrete Withstands multiple 5 ft. (1.5 m) drops to concrete.
Environmental Sealing	IP42
Ambient Light Immunity	Immune to normal indoor lighting up to 1600 Lux. Immune to sunlight up to 86,000 Lux.
Accessories	
DS4308 Hands-Free Option	Gooseneck Intellistand
DS4308P Mounting Option	Wall/table mount bracket
Power Supplies	Power supplies are available for applications that do not supply power over the host cable.

Digital Scanner Signal Descriptions

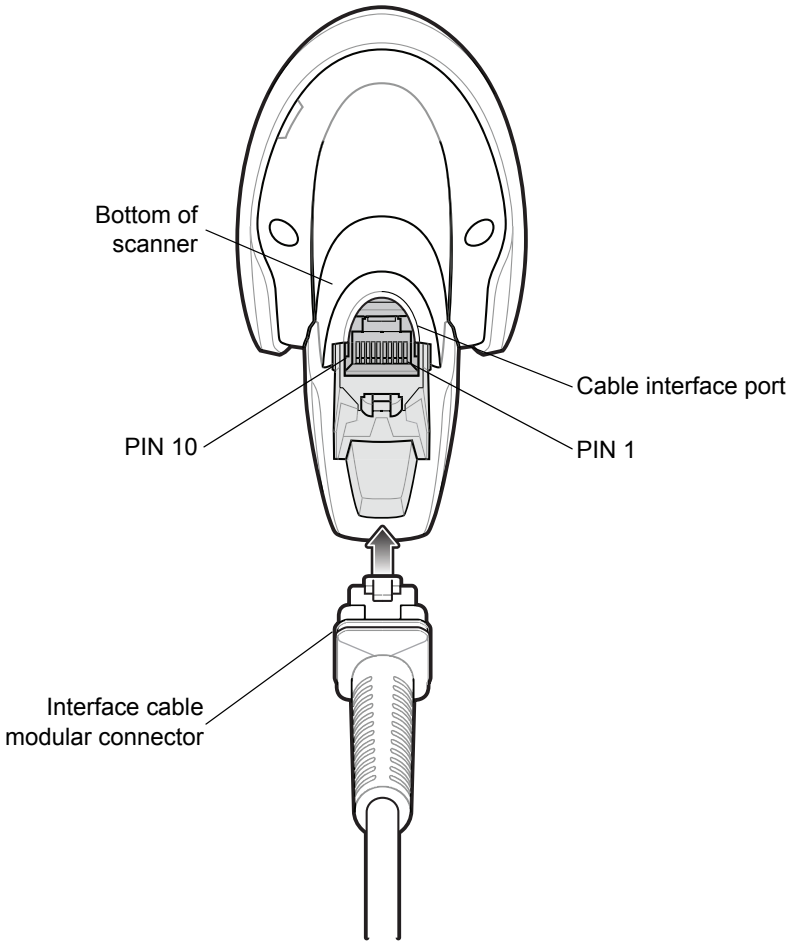


Figure 3-1 *Digital Scanner Cable Pinouts*

The signal descriptions in *Table 3-3* apply to the connectors on the DS4308 digital scanner and are for reference only.

Table 3-3 *DS4308 Digital Scanner Signal Pin-outs*

Pin	USB	RS-232	Keyboard Wedge	IBM
1	Short to Pin 6	Reserved	1M Resistor to Pin 8	2M Resistor to Pin 8
2	Power	Power	Power	Power
3	Ground	Ground	Ground	Ground
4	Reserved	TXD	KBD_CLK	IBM_TXD
5	D +	RXD	TERM_DATA	IBM_RXD
6	Short to Pin 1	RTS	KBD_DATA	IBM_DIR
7	D -	CTS	TERM_CLK	Reserved
8	Reserved	Reserved	1M Resistor to Pin 1	2M Resistor to Pin 1
9	EAS	EAS	EAS	EAS
10	EAS	EAS	EAS	EAS
SHELL	Shield	Shield	Shield	Shield

CHAPTER 4 USER PREFERENCES & MISCELLANEOUS OPTIONS

Introduction

You can program the digital scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes each user preference feature and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

The digital scanner ships with the settings shown in *Table 4-1 on page 4-2* (also see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the digital scanner is powered down.

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

If not using a USB cable, select a host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, see *Default Parameters on page 4-5*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks indicate (*) default values.

* Indicates Default — ***High Volume** — Feature/Option

(0) — Option Value

Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to set the beeper tone to high, scan the **High Frequency** (beeper tone) bar code listed under *Beeper Tone on page 4-10*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Serial Response Time-Out** or **Data Transmission Formats**, require scanning several bar codes. See these parameter descriptions for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

User Preferences/Miscellaneous Options Parameter Defaults

Table 4-1 lists defaults for user preferences parameters. To change the default values:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, see *Default Parameters on page 4-5*.
- Configure the digital scanner using the 123Scan^2 configuration program (see *Chapter 15, 123Scan2*).

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number [1]	SSI Number [2]	Default	Page Number
User Preferences				
Set Default Parameter			Restore Defaults	*4-5*
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	236	ECh	Enable	*4-6*
Beep After Good Decode	56	38h	Enable	*4-7*
Direct Decode Indicator	859	F2h 5Bh	Disable	*4-8*
Beeper Volume	140	8Ch	High	*4-9*
Beeper Tone	145	91h	Medium	*4-10*
Beeper Duration	628	F1h 74h	Medium	*4-11*
Suppress Power Up Beeps	721	F1h D1h	Do Not Suppress	*4-11*
Decode Pager Motor	613	F1h 65h	Disable	*4-12*
Decode Pager Motor Duration	626	F1h 72h	150 msec	*4-12*

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.
2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number [1]	SSI Number [2]	Default	Page Number
Night Mode Trigger	1215	F8h 04h BFh	Enable	4-15
Night Mode Toggle	N/A	N/A	N/A	4-15
Low Power Mode	128	80h	Disable	4-16
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	146	92h	1 Hour	4-17
Hand-Held Trigger Mode	138	8Ah	Auto Aim	4-19
Hands-Free Mode	630	F1h 76h	Enable	4-20
Hands Free/Hand-Held Auto Switching (DS4308P Only)	N/A	N/A	N/A	4-20
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern	306	F0h 32h	Enable	4-21
Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern	590	F1h 4Eh	Enable Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF	4-22
Hands-Free Motionless Timeout (DS4308P Only)	745	F1h E9h	2.0 seconds	4-22
Motion Detect Range (DS4308P Only)	827	F2h 3Bh	Full	4-23
Picklist Mode	402	F0h 92h	Disabled Always	4-24
Continuous Bar Code Read	649	F1h 89h	Disable	4-25
Unique Bar Code Reporting	723	F1h D3h	Enable	4-25
Decode Session Timeout	136	88h	9.9 Sec	4-26
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	137	89h	0.5 Sec	4-26
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	144	90h	0.1 sec	4-27
Fuzzy 1D Processing	514	F1h 02h	Enable	4-27
Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only)	537	F1h 19h	Auto	4-28
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	716	F1h CCh	Normal	4-29
PDF Prioritization	719	F1h CFh	Disable	4-30
PDF Prioritization Timeout	720	F1h D0h	200 ms	4-30
Presentation Mode Field of View	609	F1h 61h	Full	4-31
Decoding Illumination	298	F0h 2Ah	Enable	4-31

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.
2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number [1]	SSI Number [2]	Default	Page Number
Post Decode Illumination (DS4308P Only)	809	F2h 29h	Always Off	*4-32*
Illumination Brightness	669	F1h 9Dh	High	*4-32*
Low Light Scene Detection	810	F2h 2Ah	Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection	*4-33*
Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held Trigger Mode Only)	858	F2h 5Ah	More Motion Tolerance	*4-34*
Movement Sensitivity (DS4308P Only)	1300	F8h 05h 14h	High	*4-34*
Object Detection Method (DS4308P Only)	857	F2h 59h	IR Sensor Detection	*4-35*
Miscellaneous Options				
Enter Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	*4-36*
Transmit Code ID Character	45	2Dh	None	*4-36*
Prefix Value	99, 105	63h, 69h	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-37*
Suffix 1 Value Suffix 2 Value	98, 104 100, 106	62h, 68h 64h, 6Ah	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-37*
Scan Data Transmission Format	235	EBh	Data as is	*4-38*
FN1 Substitution Values	103, 109	67h, 6Dh	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-39*
Transmit “No Read” Message	94	5E	Disable	*4-40*
Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval	1118	F8h 04h 5Eh	Disable	*4-41*

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.
2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

User Preferences

Default Parameters

The digital scanner can be reset to two types of defaults: factory defaults or custom defaults. Scan the appropriate bar code below to reset the digital scanner to its default settings and/or set the digital scanner's current settings as the custom default.

- **Restore Defaults** - Resets all default parameters as follows:
  - If custom default values were configured (see **Write to Custom Defaults**), the custom default values are set for all parameters each time the **Restore Defaults** bar code below is scanned.
  - If no custom default values were configured, the factory default values are set for all parameters each time the **Restore Defaults** bar code below is scanned. (For factory default values, see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters*.)
- **Set Factory Defaults** - Scan the **Set Factory Defaults** bar code below to eliminate all custom default values and set the digital scanner to factory default values (For factory default values, see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters*).
- **Write to Custom Defaults** - Custom default parameters can be configured to set unique default values for all parameters. After changing all parameters to the desired default values, scan the **Write to Custom Defaults** bar code below to configure custom defaults.

***Restore Defaults**

Set Factory Defaults

Write to Custom Defaults

Parameter Bar Code Scanning

Parameter # 236 (SSI # ECh)

To disable the decoding of parameter bar codes, including the **Set Defaults** parameter bar codes, scan the **Disable Parameter Scanning** bar code below. To enable decoding of parameter bar codes, scan **Enable Parameter Scanning**.

***Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning**
(1)

Disable Parameter Bar Code Scanning
(0)

Beep After Good Decode

Parameter # 56 (SSI # 38h)

Scan a bar code below to select whether or not the digital scanner beeps after a good decode. If selecting **Do Not Beep After Good Decode**, the beeper still operates during parameter menu scanning and to indicate error conditions.

***Beep After Good Decode (Enable)**
(1)

Do Not Beep After Good Decode (Disable)
(0)

Direct Decode Indicator

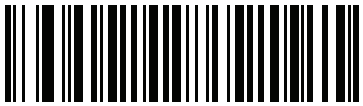
Parameter # 859 (SSI # F2h 5Bh)

This feature is only supported in Auto Aim and Standard (Level) trigger modes. Scan a bar code below to select optional blinking of the illumination on a successful decode:

- **Disable Direct Decode Indicator** - illumination does not blink on a successful decode.
- **1 Blink** - illumination blinks once upon a successful decode.
- **2 Blinks** - illumination blinks twice upon a successful decode.

***Disable Direct Decode Indicator**
(0)

1 Blink
(1)



2 Blinks
(2)

Beeper Volume

Parameter # 140 (SSI # 8Ch)

To select a beeper volume, scan the **Low Volume, Medium Volume**, or **High Volume** bar code.

Low Volume
(2)

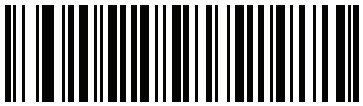
Medium Volume
(1)

***High Volume**
(0)

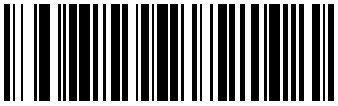
Beeper Tone

Parameter # 145 (SSI # 91h)

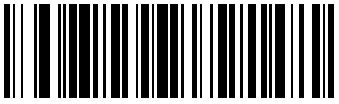
To select a beeper tone, scan one of the following bar codes.



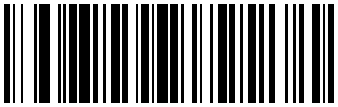
Off
(3)



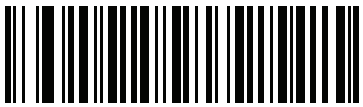
Low Tone
(2)



*** Medium Tone**
(1)



High Tone
(0)



Medium to High Tone (2-tone)
(4)

Beeper Duration

Parameter # 628 (SSI # F1h 74h)

To select the duration for the beeper, scan one of the following bar codes.

Short
(0)

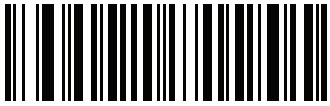
*** Medium**
(1)

Long
(2)

Suppress Power Up Beeps

Parameter # 721 (SSI # F1h D1h)

Scan a bar code below to select whether or not to suppress the digital scanner's power-up beeps.



***Do Not Suppress Power Up Beeps**
(0)

Suppress Power Up Beeps
(1)

Decode Pager Motor

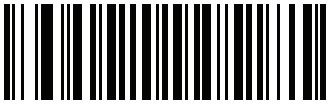
Parameter # 613 (SSI # F1h 65h)

For DS4308-HC Only

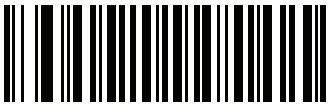
The scanner includes a pager motor which, when enabled, vibrates the scanner for a period of time when a successful decode occurs.

NOTE When the pager motor is enabled and the scanner is in the Intellistand, the pager motor disables until the scanner is removed from the Intellistand.

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable the pager motor. If enabled, scan the appropriate bar code to set the period of time in which to vibrate the scanner (see *Decode Pager Motor Duration* below).



***Pager Motor Disable**
(0)



Pager Motor Enable
(1)

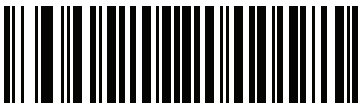
Decode Pager Motor Duration

Parameter # 626 (SSI # F1h 72h)

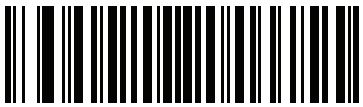
***150 msec**
(15)

200 msec
(20)

Decode Pager Motor Duration (continued)



250 msec
(25)



300 msec
(30)

400 msec
(40)

500 msec
(50)

600 msec
(60)

750 msec
(75)

Night Mode

For DS4308-HC Only

The Night Mode feature allows the user to easily switch to a “quiet mode” in order to use the pager motor with the beeper off.

Enter and exit Night Mode in one of two ways:

- If *Night Mode Trigger* is enabled, you can use the trigger to toggle between entering and exiting Night Mode. To do this, point the digital scanner away from a bar code and pull the trigger until the beam goes off. Continue to pull the trigger for an additional 5 seconds.

> ***NOTE*** After decoding a bar code, pulling the trigger an additional 5 seconds has no affect.

- Scan the *Night Mode Toggle* bar code to enter or exit Night Mode, regardless of the state of the *Night Mode Trigger* parameter.

Entering Night Mode makes the following changes to the digital scanner:

- *Decode Pager Motor* is enabled.
- *Beep After Good Decode* is disabled.

Also note the following scanner behavior regarding night mode:

- Exiting Night Mode returns the scanner to the previously programmed states for the three parameters changed (for example, if *Beep After Good Decode* was enabled before entering Night Mode, it returns to enabled upon exiting night mode).
- When entering Night Mode, the pager motor vibrates. When exiting Night Mode, the scanner emits two short beeps.
- Scanning a *Default Parameters* bar code causes the scanner to exit Night Mode.
- For scanners that do not use a pager motor, scanning any of the Night Mode parameters or the pager motor parameters results in an error beep.
- If the scanner loses power while in Night Mode because a cable is disconnected, on the next power up the scanner exits Night Mode and resumes normal operation.

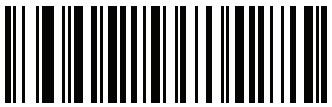
Night Mode Trigger

Parameter # 1215 (SSI # F8h 04h BFh)

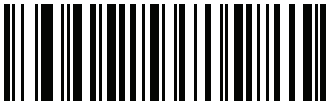
For DS4308-HC Only

Enable this to use the trigger to toggle between entering and exiting Night Mode. To toggle, point the scanner away from a bar code, pull the trigger until the beam goes off, and then continue pulling the trigger for an additional 5 seconds. Note that pulling the trigger an additional 5 seconds after decoding a bar code has no affect.

When entering Night Mode, the pager motor vibrates. When exiting Night Mode, the scanner emits 2 short beeps.



***Enable Night Mode Trigger (1)**



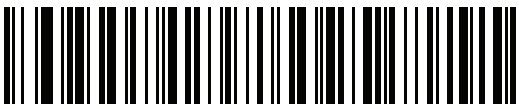
Disable Night Mode Trigger (0)

Night Mode Toggle

For DS4308-HC Only

To toggle between entering and exiting Night Mode without using the trigger, scan this bar code. This functions regardless of the state of the **Night Mode Trigger** parameter.

When scanning this bar code, the Pager Motor vibrates when entering Night Mode, and the scanner emits 2 short beeps when exiting Night Mode.



Toggle Night Mode

Low Power Mode

Parameter # 128 (SSI # 80h)

This parameter determines whether or not the digital scanner enters low power mode after a decode attempt. If disabled, power remains on after each decode attempt.

*** Disable Low Power Mode (0)**

Enable Low Power Mode (1)

Time Delay to Low Power Mode

Parameter # 146 (SSI # 92h)

NOTE This parameter only applies when Low Power Mode is enabled.

This parameter sets the time the digital scanner remains active before entering low power mode. The digital scanner wakes upon trigger pull or when the host attempts to communicate with the digital scanner.

1 Second
(17)

10 Seconds
(26)

1 Minute
(33)

5 Minutes
(37)

15 Minutes
(43)

Time Delay to Low Power Mode (continued)

30 Minutes
(45)

45 Minutes
(46)

*** 1 Hour**
(49)

3 Hours
(51)

6 Hours
(54)

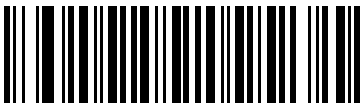
9 Hours
(57)

Hand-Held Trigger Mode

Parameter # 138 (SSI # 8Ah)

Select one of the following trigger modes for the digital scanner.

- **Standard (Level)** - A trigger pull activates decode processing. Decode processing continues until the bar code decodes, you release the trigger, or the *Decode Session Timeout on page 4-26* occurs.
- **Presentation (Blink)** - The digital scanner activates decode processing when it detects a bar code in its field of view. After a period of non-use, the digital scanner enters a low power mode, in which the LEDs turn off until the digital scanner senses motion.
- **Auto Aim** - This trigger mode projects the aiming dot when you lift the digital scanner. A trigger pull activates decode processing. After 2 seconds of inactivity the aiming dot shuts off.



Level (Standard)
(0)

Presentation (Blink)
(7)

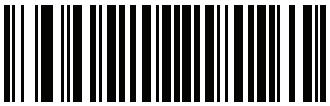
*** Auto Aim**
(9)

Hands-Free Mode

Parameter # 630 (SSI # F1h 76h)

In hands-free mode, when you place the digital scanner on the counter top, it automatically triggers when presented with a bar code. Lifting the digital scanner causes it to behave according to the setting of the *Hand-Held Trigger Mode on page 4-19*.

If you select **Disable Hands-Free Mode**, the digital scanner behaves according to the setting of the *Hand-Held Trigger Mode on page 4-19* regardless of whether it is hand-held or on a counter top.



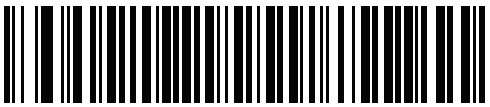
***Enable Hands-Free Mode (1)**

Disable Hands-Free Mode (0)

Hands-Free/Hand-Held Auto Switching (DS4308P Only)

This parameter controls whether the DS4308P automatically switches between hands-free and hand-held modes. Select one of the following options:

- **Presentation (Blink) in Hand-Held and Hands-Free Modes**: This prevents the scanner from automatically switching and is equivalent to setting *Hand-Held Trigger Mode* to **Presentation (Blink)** and *Hands-Free Mode* to **Disable**.
- **Auto Aim in Hand-Held, Auto Switching to Hands-Free Enabled**: This resets *Hand-Held Trigger Mode* to **Auto Aim** and *Hands-Free Mode* to **Enable.**



Presentation (Blink) in Hand-Held and Hands-Free Modes

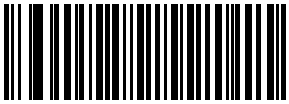
Auto Aim in Hand-Held, Auto Switching to Hands-Free Enabled

Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern

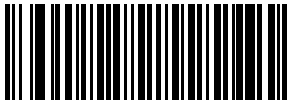
Parameter # 306 (SSI # F0h 32h)

Select **Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming dot during bar code capture, **Disable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming dot off, or **Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF** to project the aiming dot when the digital scanner detects a 2D bar code.

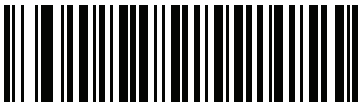
NOTE With *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* enabled, the decode aiming dot flashes even when the **Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern** is disabled.



***Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern**
(2)



Disable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern
(0)



Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF
(3)

Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern

Parameter # 590 (SSI # F1h 4Eh)

Select **Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming dot during bar code capture, **Disable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming dot off, or **Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF** to project the aiming dot when the digital scanner detects a 2D bar code.

NOTE With *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* enabled, the decode aiming dot flashes even when the **Decode Aiming Pattern** is disabled.

Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern (1)

Disable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern (0)

***Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF (2)**

Hands-Free Motionless Timeout (DS4308P Only)

Parameter # 745 (SSI # F1h E9h)

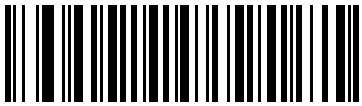
This feature determines how long the DS4308P remains motionless before automatically returning to a presentation (hands-free) mode of operation. To specify the timeout in 100 ms increments, scan the following bar code. Next, scan three numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired timeout in the range of 0.5 (value 005) to 25.5 (value 255) seconds. Enter a leading zero if necessary. For example, to set a timeout of 5 seconds, scan the bar code below, then scan the **0**, **5**, and **0** bar codes. The default is 2.0 seconds.

Hands-Free Motionless Timeout

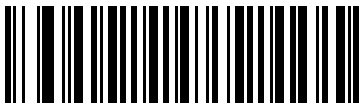
Motion Detect Range (DS4308P Only)

Parameter # 827 (SSI # F2h 3Bh)

This parameter controls the distance, or range, at which the DS4308P detects object motion and then triggers while in presentation mode.



***Full Range**
(1)



Medium Range
(3)

Short Range
(8)

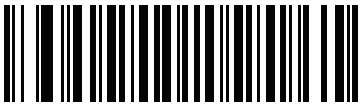
Picklist Mode

Parameter # 402 (SSI # F0h 92h)

Picklist mode enables the digital scanner to decode only bar codes that are aligned under the LED aiming dot. Select one of the following picklist modes for the digital scanner:

- **Disabled Always** - Picklist mode is always disabled.
- **Enabled in Hand-Held Mode** - Picklist mode is enabled in hand-held mode.

***Disabled Always**
(0)



Enabled in Hand-Held Mode
(1)

✓ ***NOTE*** Picklist Mode temporarily overrides the Disable Decode Aiming Pattern parameter. You can not disable the decode aiming pattern when Picklist Mode is enabled.

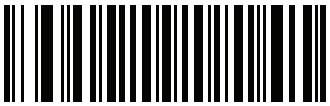
Continuous Bar Code Read

Parameter # 649 (SSI # F1h 89h)

Enable this to report every bar code while the trigger is pulled.

✓ ***NOTE*** Symbol Technologies strongly recommends enabling *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* with this feature. Disabling Picklist Mode can cause accidental decodes when more than one bar code is in the digital scanner's field of view.

***Disable Continuous Bar Code Read**
(0)



Enable Continuous Bar Code Read
(1)

Unique Bar Code Reporting

Parameter # 723 (SSI # F1h D3h)

Enable this to report only unique bar codes while the trigger is pulled. This option only applies when **Continuous Bar Code Read** is enabled.

Disable Continuous Bar Code Read Uniqueness
(0)

***Enable Continuous Bar Code Read Uniqueness**
(1)

Decode Session Timeout

Parameter # 136 (SSI # 88h)

This parameter sets the maximum time decode processing continues during a scan attempt. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.5 to 9.9 seconds. The default timeout is 9.9 seconds.

To set a Decode Session Timeout, scan the bar code below. Next, scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired on time. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. For example, to set a Decode Session Timeout of 0.5 seconds, scan the bar code below, then scan the **0** and **5** bar codes. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.

Decode Session Timeout

Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol

Parameter # 137 (SSI # 89h)

Use this option in Continuous Bar Code Read mode to prevent the beeper from continuously beeping when a symbol is left in the digital scanner's field of view. The bar code must be out of the field of view for the timeout period before the digital scanner reads the same consecutive symbol. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.0 to 9.9 seconds. The default interval is 0.5 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for the same symbol, scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments.

Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol

Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols

Parameter # 144 (SSI # 90h)

Use this option in presentation mode or Continuous Bar Code Read to control the time the digital scanner is inactive between decoding different symbols. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.1 to 9.9 seconds. The default is 0.1 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for different symbols, scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments.

NOTE Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols cannot be greater than or equal to the Decode Session Timeout.

Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols

Fuzzy 1D Processing

Parameter # 514 (SSI # F1h 02h)

This option is enabled by default to optimize decode performance on 1D bar codes, including damaged and poor quality symbols. Disable this only if you experience time delays when decoding 2D bar codes, or in detecting a no decode.

***Enable Fuzzy 1D Processing**
(1)

Disable Fuzzy 1D Processing
(0)

Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only)

Parameter # 537 (SSI # F1h 19h)

Select an option for decoding mirror image Data Matrix bar codes:

- Always - decode only Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images
- Never - do not decode Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images
- Auto - decode both mirrored and unmirrored Data Matrix bar codes.

Never
(0)

Always
(1)

***Auto**
(2)

Mobile Phone/Display Mode

Parameter # 716 (SSI # F1h CCh)

This mode improves bar code reading performance off mobile phones and electronic displays. Select Enhanced in hand-held, hands-free, or both modes, or select Normal Mobile Phone/Display Mode.

***Normal Mobile Phone/Display Mode (0)**

Enhanced in Hand-Held Mode (1)

Enhanced in Hands-Free Mode (2)

Enhanced in Both Modes (3)

PDF Prioritization

Parameter # 719 (SSI # F1h CFh)

Enable this feature to delay decoding a 1D bar code (Code 128) by the value specified in *PDF Prioritization Timeout*. During that time the digital scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol (e.g., on a US driver's license), and if successful, reports this only. If it does not decode (can not find) a PDF417 symbol, it reports the 1D symbol after the timeout. The 1D symbol must be in the device's field of view for the digital scanner to report it. This parameter does not affect decoding other symbologies..

NOTE

The 1D Code 128 bar code lengths include the following:

- 7 to 10 characters
- 14 to 17 characters
- 27 to 28 characters

In addition, a Code 39 bar code with the following lengths are considered to potentially be part of a US driver's license:

- 8 characters
- 12 characters

***Disable PDF Prioritization (0)**

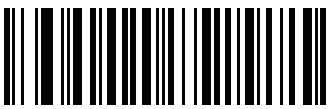
Enable PDF Prioritization (1)

PDF Prioritization Timeout

Parameter # 720 (SSI # F1h D0h)

When *PDF Prioritization* is enabled, this timeout specifies how long the digital scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol before reporting the 1D bar code in the field of view.

Scan the following bar code, then scan four digits from*Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* that specify the timeout in milliseconds. For example, to enter 400 ms, scan the following bar code, then scan 0400. The range is 0 to 5000 ms, and the default is 200 ms.



PDF Prioritization Timeout

Presentation Mode Field of View

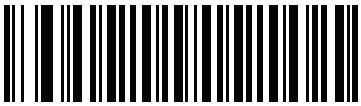
Parameter # 609 (SSI # F1h 61h)

In presentation mode, by default the digital scanner searches the larger area of the aiming pattern (**Full Field of View**).

To search for a bar code in a smaller region around the aiming dot's center in order to speed search time, select **Small Field of View** or **Medium Field of View**.

Small Field of View
(0)

Medium Field of View
(1)



***Full Field of View**
(2)

Decoding Illumination

Parameter # 298 (SSI # F0h 2Ah)

Selecting **Enable Decoding Illumination** causes the digital scanner to flash illumination to aid decoding. Select **Disable Decoding Illumination** to prevent the digital scanner from using decoding illumination.

Enabling illumination usually results in superior images. The effectiveness of the illumination decreases as the distance to the target increases.

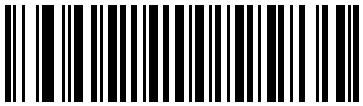
***Enable Decoding Illumination**
(1)

Disable Decoding Illumination
(0)

Post Decode Illumination (DS4308P Only)

Parameter # 809 (SSI # F2h 29h)

This parameter controls illumination after decode. Select **Always Off** to turn off illumination immediately after decode. Select **Always On** to keep Illumination on after decode so the DS4308P is ready for next decode, or to keep illumination on until timeout.



Always On
(0)

***Always Off**
(1)

Illumination Brightness

Parameter # 669 (SSI # F1h 9Dh)

This parameter controls the illumination brightness used during an active decode session and only applies in hand-held mode (not in presentation mode).

***High**
(8)

Medium
(4)

Low
(2)

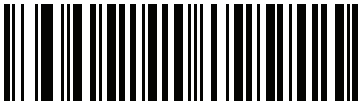
Low Light Scene Detection

Parameter # 810 (SSI # F2h 2Ah)

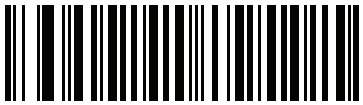
This parameter allows the digital scanner to be able to detect motion in dim to dark illumination environments when in presentation mode.

NOTE This feature does NOT apply to the DS4308P (presentation configuration).

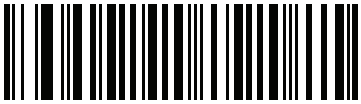
- **No Low Light Scene Detection**: The digital scanner attempts to detect motion as best it can with the aim dot and illumination turned off when the digital scanner is idle.
- **Aiming Dot Low Light Assist Scene Detection**: Illumination is turned off, but the aim dot is turned on when the digital scanner is idle to assist in scene detection.
- **Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection** (default): The aim dot is turned off, but illumination is turned on at a dim level to assist in scene detection.



No Low Light Assist Scene Detection (0)



Aiming Dot Low Light Assist Scene Detection (1)



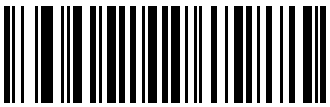
***Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection (2)**

Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held Trigger Modes Only)

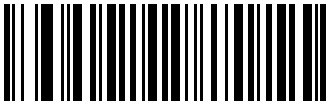
Parameter # 858 (SSI # F2h 5Ah)

Less Motion Tolerance provides optimal decoding performance on 1D bar codes.

To increase motion tolerance and speed decoding when scanning a series of 1D bar codes in rapid progression, scan **More Motion Tolerance**.



Less Motion Tolerance
(0)



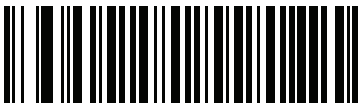
***More Motion Tolerance**
(1)

Movement Sensitivity (DS4308P Only)

Parameter # 1300 (SSI # F8h 05h 14h)

Select an option to set the scanner's sensitivity to movement.

***High**
(0)



Medium
(1)

Low
(2)

Object Detection Method (DS4308P Only)

Parameter # 857 (SSI # F2h 59h)

This option applies to presentation mode only. Select the method used to detect objects in front of the scanner:

- **IR Sensor Detection** uses the built-in infrared sensor which is less reliant on ambient light levels.
- **Scene Detection** uses scene detection changes observed by the camera (as specified by the setting of *Low Light Scene Detection on page 4-33*).

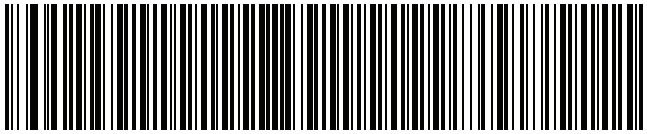
***IR Sensor Detection**
(0)

Use Scene Detection
(1)

Miscellaneous Scanner Parameters

Enter Key

To add an Enter key (carriage return/line feed) after scanned data, scan the following bar code. To program other prefixes and/or suffixes, see *Prefix/Suffix Values on page 4-37*.



Add Enter Key (Carriage Return/Line Feed)

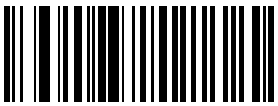
Transmit Code ID Character

Parameter # 45 (SSI # 2Dh)

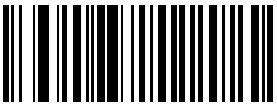
A Code ID character identifies the code type of a scanned bar code. This is useful when decoding more than one code type. In addition to any single character prefix already selected, the Code ID character is inserted between the prefix and the decoded symbol.

Select no Code ID character, a Symbol Code ID character, or an AIM Code ID character. For Code ID characters, see *Symbol Code Identifiers on page E-1* and *Programming Reference on page E-1*.

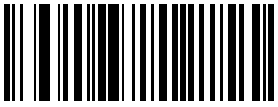
✓ ***NOTE*** If you enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character, and enable *Transmit "No Read" Message on page 4-40*, the digital scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.



Symbol Code ID Character
(2)



AIM Code ID Character
(1)



***None**
(0)

Prefix/Suffix Values

Key Category Parameter # P = 99, S1 = 98, S2 = 100 (SSI # P = 63h, S1 = 62h, S2 = 64h)

Decimal Value Parameter # P = 105, S1 = 104, S2 = 106 (SSI # P = 69h, S1 = 68h, S2 = 6Ah)

You can append a prefix and/or one or two suffixes to scan data for use in data editing. To set a value for a prefix or suffix, scan a four-digit number (i.e., four bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*) that corresponds to that value. See*Appendix H, ASCII Character Sets* for the four-digit codes.

When using host commands to set the prefix or suffix, set the key category parameter to 1, then set the 3-digit decimal value. See *Appendix H, ASCII Character Sets* for the four-digit codes.

The default prefix and suffix value is 7013 <CR><LF> (the Enter key). To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.

NOTE To use Prefix/Suffix values, first set the *Scan Data Transmission Format on page 4-38*.

Scan Prefix
(7)

Scan Suffix 1
(6)

Scan Suffix 2
(8)

Data Format Cancel

Scan Data Transmission Format

Parameter # 235 (SSI # EBh)

To change the scan data format, scan one of the following eight bar codes corresponding to the desired format.

NOTE If using this parameter do not use ADF rules to set the prefix/suffix.

To set values for the prefix and/or suffix, see *Prefix/Suffix Values on page 4-37*.

***Data As Is**
(0)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 1>
(1)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 2>
(2)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>
(3)

<PREFIX> <DATA >
(4)

Scan Data Transmission Format (continued)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1>
(5)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 2>
(6)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>
(7)

FN1 Substitution Values

Key Category Parameter # 103 (SSI # 67h)

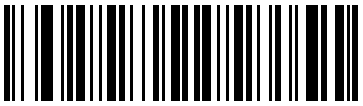
Decimal Value Parameter # 109 (SSI # 6Dh)

The wedge and USB HID keyboard hosts support a FN1 Substitution feature. Enabling this substitutes any FN1 character (0x1b) in an EAN128 bar code with a value. This value defaults to 7013 (Enter Key).

When using host commands to set the FN1 substitution value, set the key category parameter to 1, then set the 3-digit keystroke value. See the ASCII Character Set table for the current host interface for the desired value.

To select a FN1 substitution value via bar code menus:

1. Scan the bar code below.



Set FN1 Substitution Value

2. Locate the keystroke desired for FN1 Substitution in the ASCII Character Set table for the current host interface. Enter the 4-digit ASCII Value by scanning each digit in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*.

To correct an error or change the selection, scan **Cancel**.

To enable FN1 substitution for USB HID keyboard, scan the **Enable FN1 Substitution** bar code on page *4-39*.

Transmit “No Read” Message

Parameter # 94 (SSI # 5Eh)

Scan a bar code below to select whether or not to transmit a No Read message. Enable this to transmit the characters NR when a successful decode does not occur before trigger release or the **Decode Session Timeout** expires. See *Decode Session Timeout on page 4-26*. Disable this to send nothing to the host if a symbol does not decode.

NOTE If you enable **Transmit No Read**, and also enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character for *Transmit Code ID Character on page 4-36*, the digital scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.

Enable No Read
(1)

***Disable No Read**
(0)

Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval

Parameter # 1118 (SSI # F8h 04h 5Eh)

The imager supports sending *Unsolicited Heartbeat Messages* to assist in diagnostics. To enable this feature and set the desired unsolicited heartbeat interval, scan one of the time interval bar codes below, or scan **Set Another Interval** followed by four numeric bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* (scan sequential numbers that correspond to the desired number of seconds).

Scan **Disable Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval** to turn off the feature.

The heartbeat event is sent as decode data (with no decode beep) in the form of:

MOTEVTHB:nnn

where *nnn* is a three-digit sequence number starting at 001 and wrapping after 100.

10 seconds
(10)

1 minute
(60)

Set Another Interval

***Disable Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval**
(0)

CHAPTER 5 IMAGING PREFERENCES

Introduction

You can program the digital scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes imaging preference features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

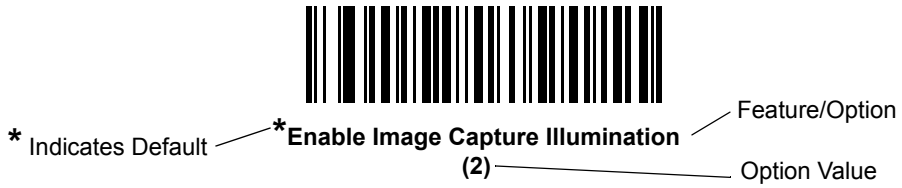
> ***NOTE*** Only the Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging interface supports image capture. See *USB Device Type on page 6-5* to enable this host.

The digital scanner ships with the settings in *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults on page 5-2* (also see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all host device and miscellaneous defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when you power down the digital scanner.

> ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

To return all features to default values, scan the *Set Factory Defaults on page 4-5*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to disable image capture illumination, scan the **Disable Image Capture Illumination** bar code under *Image Capture Illumination on page 5-5*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See these parameter descriptions for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults

Table 5-1 lists the defaults for imaging preferences parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan **Restore Defaults on page 4-5*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 5-1 *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Imaging Preferences				
Operational Modes	N/A	N/A	N/A	*5-4*
Image Capture Illumination	361	F0h 69h	Enable	*5-5*
Image Capture Autoexposure	360	F0h 68h	Enable	*5-5*
Fixed Exposure	567	F4h F1h 37h	100	*5-6*
Fixed Gain	568	F1h 38h	50	*5-6*
Gain / Exposure Priority for Snapshot Mode	562	F1h 32h	Autodetect	*5-7*
Snapshot Mode Timeout	323	F0h 43h	0 (30 seconds)	*5-8*
Snapshot Aiming Pattern	300	F0h 2Ch	Enable	*5-9*
Silence Operational Mode Changes	1293	F8h 05h 0Dh	Disable (do not silence)	*5-9*
Image Cropping	301	F0h 2Dh	Disable	*5-10*
Crop to Pixel Addresses	315 316 317 318	F4h F0h 3Bh F4h F0h 3Ch F4h F0h 3Dh F4h F0h 3Eh	0 top 0 left 799 bottom 1279 right	*5-11*

Table 5-1 *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Image Size (Number of Pixels)	302	F0h 2Eh	Full	5-12
Image Brightness (Target White)	390	F0h 86h	180	5-13
JPEG Image Options	299	F0h 2Bh	Quality	5-13
JPEG Target File Size	561	F1h 31h	160 kB	5-14
JPEG Quality and Size Value	305	F0h 31h	65	5-14
Image Enhancement	564	F1h 34h	Low (1)	5-15
Image File Format Selection	304	F0h 30h	JPEG	5-16
Image Rotation	665	F1h 99h	0	5-17
Bits per Pixel (BPP)	303	F0h 2Fh	8 BPP	5-18
Signature Capture	93	5Dh	Disable	5-19
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	313	F0h 39h	JPEG	5-20
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	314	F0h 3Ah	8 BPP	5-21
Signature Capture Width	366	F4h F0h 6Eh	400	5-22
Signature Capture Height	367	F4h F0h 6Fh	100	5-22
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	421	F0h A5h	65	5-22
Video Mode Format Selector	916	F2h 94h	JPEG	5-23
Video View Finder	324	F0h 44h	Disable	5-23
Target Video Frame Size	328	F0h 48h	2200 bytes	5-24
Video View Finder Image Size	329	F0h 49h	1700 bytes	5-24

Imaging Preferences

The parameters in this chapter control image capture characteristics. Image capture occurs in all modes of operation, including decode, video, and snapshot.

Operational Modes

The digital scanner has two modes of operation:

- Decode Mode
- Snapshot Mode
- Video Mode.

Decode Mode

By default, when you pull the trigger the digital scanner attempts to locate and decode enabled bar codes within its field of view. The digital scanner remains in this mode until it decodes a bar code or you release the trigger.

Snapshot Mode

Use Snapshot Mode to capture a high-quality image and transmit it to the host. To temporarily enter this mode scan the **Snapshot Mode** bar code. While in this mode the digital scanner blinks the green LED at 1-second intervals to indicate it is not in standard operating (decode) mode.

In Snapshot Mode, the digital scanner turns on its aiming pattern to highlight the area to capture in the image. The next trigger pull instructs the digital scanner to capture a high quality image and transmit it to the host. A short time may pass (less than 2 seconds) between when the trigger is pulled and the image is captured as the digital scanner adjusts to the lighting conditions. Hold the digital scanner steady until the image is captured, denoted by a single beep.

If you do not press the trigger within the Snapshot Mode Timeout period, the digital scanner returns to Decode Mode. Use *Snapshot Mode Timeout on page 5-8* to adjust this timeout period. The default timeout period is 30 seconds.

To disable the aiming pattern during Snapshot Mode, see *Snapshot Aiming Pattern on page 5-9*.

Snapshot Mode

Video Mode

In this mode the digital scanner behaves as a video camera as long as you press the trigger. Release the trigger to return the digital scanner to Decode Mode. Scan this bar code to temporarily enter Video Capture Mode.

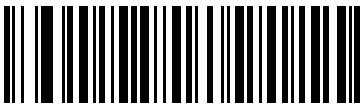
Video Mode

Image Capture Illumination

Parameter # 361 (SSI # F0h 69h)

Selecting **Enable Image Capture Illumination** causes illumination to turn on during every image capture. Disable illumination to prevent the digital scanner from using illumination.

Enabling illumination usually results in superior images. The effectiveness of illumination decreases as the distance to the target increases.



***Enable Image Capture Illumination (1)**

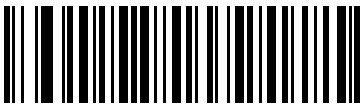
Disable Image Capture Illumination (0)

Image Capture Autoexposure

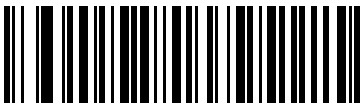
Parameter # 360 (SSI # F0h 68h)

Select **Enable Image Capture Autoexposure** to allow the digital scanner to control gain settings and exposure (integration) time to best capture an image for the selected operation mode.

Select **Disable Image Capture Autoexposure** to manually adjust the gain and exposure time (see the following pages). This option is only recommended for advanced users with difficult image capture situations.



***Enable Image Capture Autoexposure (1)**



Disable Image Capture Autoexposure (0)

Fixed Exposure

Parameter # 567 (SSI # F4h F1h 37h)

Type: Word

Range: 1 - 1000

This parameter configures the exposure used in manual mode for Snapshot and Video modes.

Each integer value represents 100 µs worth of exposure. The default value is 100 which results in an exposure setting of 10 ms.

To set the Fixed Exposure parameter, scan **Fixed Exposure** followed by four numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set a Fixed Exposure value of 99, scan 0, 0, 9, 9. See *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes.

Fixed Exposure (4 digits)

Fixed Gain

Parameter # 568 (SSI # F1h 38h)

Type: Byte

Range 1 - 100

This parameter configures the gain setting used in manual mode for Snapshot and Video modes.

A value of 1 indicates that gain is not used for image capture. A value of 100 indicates that maximum gain is used for image capture. The default value of this parameter is 50.

To set the Fixed Gain parameter, scan **Fixed Gain** below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set a Fixed Gain value of 99, scan 0, 9, 9. See *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes.

Fixed Gain

Gain/Exposure Priority for Snapshot Mode

Parameter # 562 (SSI # F1h 32h)

This parameter alters the digital scanner's gain exposure priority when it acquires an image in Snapshot Mode in auto exposure mode.

- Scan **Low Exposure Priority** to set a mode in which the digital scanner favors higher gain over exposure to capture an image. This results in an image that is less susceptible to motion blur at the expense of noise artifacts. However, for most applications, the amount of noise is acceptable.
- Scan **Low Gain Priority** to set a mode in which the digital scanner favors longer exposure time rather than higher gain to capture an image. This ensures that the image is less noisy and produces fewer artifacts during post processing activities like image enhancement (sharpening). The mode is recommended for fixed mount / fixed object image capture since the image acquired is susceptible to motion blur.
- Scan **Autodetect** (default) to set a mode in which the digital scanner automatically selects Gain Priority or Low Exposure Priority mode for Snapshot Mode. If the digital scanner is in a magnetic reed switch enabled stand (or it is configured in Blink Mode), it uses Low Gain Priority mode. Otherwise, it uses the Low Exposure Priority mode.

Low Gain Priority
(0)

Low Exposure Priority
(1)

*** Autodetect**
(2)

Snapshot Mode Timeout

Parameter # 323 (SSI # F0h 43h)

This parameter sets the amount of time the digital scanner remains in Snapshot Mode. The digital scanner exits Snapshot Mode when you pull the trigger, or when the Snapshot Mode Timeout elapses. To set this timeout value, scan the **Set Snapshot Mode Timeout** bar code below followed by a bar code from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. The default value is 0 which represents 30 seconds; values increment by 30. For example, 1 = 60 seconds, 2 = 90 seconds, etc.

To quickly re-set the default timeout to 30 seconds, scan the **30 Seconds** bar code below.

If you select **No Timeout**, the digital scanner remains in Snapshot Mode until you pull the trigger.

Set Snapshot Mode Timeout

***30 Seconds**

No Timeout

Snapshot Aiming Pattern

Parameter # 300 (SSI # F0h 2Ch)

Select **Enable Snapshot Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming pattern when in Snapshot Mode, or **Disable Snapshot Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming pattern off.

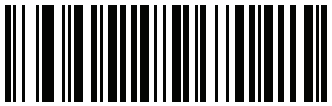
***Enable Snapshot Aiming Pattern**
(1)

Disable Snapshot Aiming Pattern
(0)

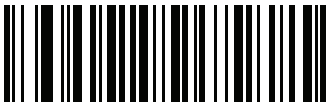
Silence Operational Mode Changes

Parameter # 1293 (SSI # F8h 05h 0Dh)

Enable this feature to silence the beeper when switching between operational modes (e.g., from Decode Mode to Snapshot Mode).



Silence Operational Mode Changes (Enable)
(1)



***Do Not Silence Operational Mode Changes (Disable)**
(0)

Image Cropping

Parameter # 301 (SSI # F0h 2Dh)

This parameter crops a captured image. Select **Disable Image Cropping** to present the full 1200 x 800 pixels. Select **Enable Image Cropping** to crop the image to the pixel addresses set in *Crop to Pixel Addresses on page 5-11*.

Enable Image Cropping
(1)

***Disable Image Cropping**
(Use Full 1200 x 800 Pixels)
(0)

Crop to Pixel Addresses

Parameter # 315 (SSI # F4h F0h 3Bh) (Top)
Parameter # 316 (SSI # F4h F0h 3Ch) (Left)
Parameter # 317 (SSI # F4h F0h 3Dh) (Bottom)
Parameter # 318 (SSI # F4h F0h 3Eh) (Right)

If you selected **Enable Image Cropping**, set the pixel addresses from (0,0) to (1279 x 799) to crop to.

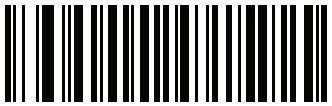
Columns are numbered from 0 to 1279, rows from 0 to 799. Specify four values for Top, Left, Bottom, and Right, where Top and Bottom correspond to row pixel addresses, and Left and Right correspond to column pixel addresses. For example, for a 4 row x 8 column image in the extreme bottom-right section of the image set the following values:

Top = 796, Bottom = 799, Left = 1272, Right = 1279

To set the crop to pixel address, scan each pixel address bar code below followed by four numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to crop the top pixel address to 3, scan 0, 0, 0, 3. See *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes. The defaults are:

Top = 0, Bottom = 799, Left = 0, Right = 1279

✓ ***NOTE*** The digital scanner has a cropping resolution of 4 pixels. Setting the cropping area to less than 4 pixels (after resolution adjustment, see *Image Size (Number of Pixels) on page 5-12*) transfers the entire image.



Top Pixel Address
(0 - 799 Decimal)

Left Pixel Address
(0 - 1279 Decimal)

Bottom Pixel Address
(0 - 799 Decimal)

Right Pixel Address
(0 - 1279 Decimal)

Image Size (Number of Pixels)

Parameter # 302 (SSI # F0h 2Eh)

This option alters image resolution before compression. Multiple pixels are combined to one pixel, resulting in a smaller image containing the original content with reduced resolution.

Select one of the following values:

Resolution Value	Uncropped Image Size
Full	1280 x 800
1/2	640 x 400
1/4	320 x 200

***Full Resolution**
(0)

1/2 Resolution
(1)

1/4 Resolution
(3)

Image Brightness (Target White)

Parameter # 390 (SSI # F0h 86h)

Type: Byte

Range: 1 - 240

This parameter sets the Target White value used in Snapshot and Video Viewfinder mode when using auto exposure. White and black are defined as 240 decimal and 1, respectively. Setting the value to the factory default of 180 sets the white level of the image to ~180.

To set the Image Brightness parameter, scan **Image Brightness** below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set an Image Brightness value of 99, scan 0, 9, 9. See *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes.

***180**

Image Brightness
(3 digits)

JPEG Image Options

Parameter # 299 (SSI # F0h 2Bh)

Select an option to optimize JPEG images for either size or for quality. Scan the **JPEG Quality Selector** bar code to enter a quality value; the digital scanner then selects the corresponding image size. Scan the **JPEG Size Selector** bar code to enter a size value; the digital scanner then selects the best image quality.

***JPEG Quality Selector**
(1)

JPEG Size Selector
(0)

JPEG Target File Size

Parameter # 561 (SSI # F1h 31h)

Type: Word

Range: 5-350

This parameter defines the target JPEG file size in terms 1 Kilobytes (1024 bytes). The default value is 160 kB which represents 160 Kilobytes.

CAUTION JPEG compress may take 10 to 15 seconds based on the amount of information in the target image. Scanning **JPEG Quality Selector** (default setting) on *page 5-13* produces a compressed image that is consistent in quality and compression time.

To set the JPEG Target File Size parameter, scan **JPEG Target File Size** below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set an image file size value of 99, scan 0, 9, 9 in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*.

JPEG Target File Size
(3 digits)

JPEG Quality and Size Value

JPEG Quality = Parameter # 305 (SSI # F0h 31h)

If you selected **JPEG Quality Selector**, scan the **JPEG Quality Value** bar code followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value from 5 to 100, where 100 represents the highest quality image.

JPEG Quality Value
(Default: 065)
(5 - 100 Decimal)

Image Enhancement

Parameter # 564 (SSI # F1h 34h)

This parameter configures the digital scanner's Image Enhance feature. This feature uses a combination of edge sharpening and contrast enhancement to produce an image that is visually pleasing.

The levels of image enhancement are:

- Off (0)
- Low (1) - Default
- Med (2)
- High (3).

Off
(0)

***Low**
(1)

Medium
(2)

High
(3)

Image File Format Selector

Parameter # 304 (SSI # F0h 30h)

Select an image format appropriate for the system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The digital scanner stores captured images in the selected format.

BMP File Format
(3)

***JPEG File Format**
(1)

TIFF File Format
(04h)

Image Rotation

Parameter # 665 (SSI # F1h 99h)

This parameter controls the rotation of the image by 0, 90,180, or 270 degrees.

***Rotate 0°**
(0)

Rotate 90°
(1)

Rotate 180°
(2)

Rotate 270°
(3)

Bits Per Pixel

Parameter # 303 (SSI # F0h 2Fh)

Select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing an image. Select **1 BPP** for a black and white image, **4 BPP** to assign 1 of 16 levels of grey to each pixel, or **8 BPP** to assign 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

NOTE The digital scanner ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support **8 BPP**.

The digital scanner ignores 1 BPP for TIFF file formats, which only support **4 BPP** and **8 BPP**. 1 BPP is coerced to 4 BPP for TIFF file formats.

1 BPP
(0)

4 BPP
(1)

***8 BPP**
(2)

Signature Capture

Parameter # 93 (SSI # 5Dh)

A signature capture bar code is a special-purpose symbology which delineates a signature capture area in a document with a machine-readable format. The recognition pattern is variable so it can optionally provide an index to various signatures. The region inside the bar code pattern is considered the signature capture area. See *Appendix I, Signature Capture Code* for more information.

Output File Format

Decoding a signature capture bar code de-skews the signature image and converts the image to a BMP, JPEG, or TIFF file format. The output data includes the file descriptor followed by the formatted signature image.

File Descriptor			Signature Image
Output Format (1 byte)	Signature Type (1 byte)	Signature Image Size (4 bytes) (BIG Endian)	
JPEG - 1 BMP - 3 TIFF - 4	1-8	0x00000400	0x00010203….

To enable or disable Signature Capture, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Signature Capture (1)

***Disable Signature Capture (0)**

Signature Capture File Format Selector

Parameter # 313 (SSI # F0h 39h)

Select a signature file format appropriate for the system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The digital scanner stores captured signatures in the selected format.

BMP Signature Format
(3)

***JPEG Signature Format**
(1)

TIFF Signature Format
(4)

Signature Capture Bits Per Pixel

Parameter # 314 (SSI # F0h 3Ah)

Select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing a signature. Select **1 BPP** for a black and white image, **4 BPP** to assign 1 of 16 levels of grey to each pixel, or **8 BPP** to assign 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

NOTE The digital scanner ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support **8 BPP**.

1 BPP
(0)

4 BPP
(1)

***8 BPP**
(2)

Signature Capture Width

Parameter # 366 (SSI # F4h F0h 6Eh)

The aspect ratio of the Signature Capture Width and Signature Capture Height parameters must match that of the signature capture area. For example, a 4 x 1 inch signature capture area would require a 4 to 1 aspect ratio of width to height.

To set the width of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Width** bar code, followed by 4 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 1280 decimal.

Signature Capture Width
(Default: 400)
(001 - 1280 Decimal)

Signature Capture Height

Parameter # 367 (SSI # F4h F0h 6Fh)

To set the height of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Height** bar code, followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 800 decimal.

Signature Capture Height (Default: 100)
(001 - 800 Decimal)

Signature Capture JPEG Quality

Parameter # 421 (SSI # F0h A5h)

Scan the **JPEG Quality Value** bar code followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value from 005 to 100, where 100 represents the highest quality image.

JPEG Quality Value (Default: 065)
(5 - 100 Decimal)

Video Mode Format Selector

Parameter # 916 (SSI # F2h 94h)

When the digital imager scanner is in Video Mode, select whether to send data in BMP or JPEG format.

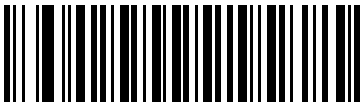
BMP File Format
(3)

***JPEG File Format**
(1)

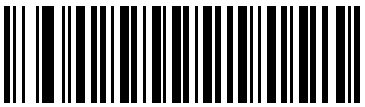
Video View Finder

Parameter # 324 (SSI # F0h 44h)

Select **Enable Video View Finder** to project the video view finder while in Video Mode, or **Disable Video View Finder** to turn the video view finder off.



***Disable Video View Finder**
(0)



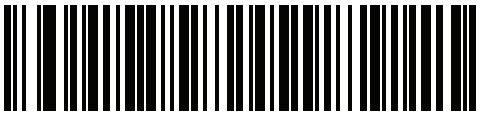
Enable Video View Finder
(1)

Target Video Frame Size

Parameter # 328 (SSI # F0h 48h)

Select the number of 100-byte blocks to transmit per second. Selecting a smaller value transmits more frames per second but reduces video quality; selecting a larger value increases video quality but slows transmission.

To set the Target Video Frame Size, scan the bar code below followed by three bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to the 100-byte value from 800 to 20,000 bytes. For example, to select 1500 bytes, enter 0, 1, 5. To select 900 bytes, enter 0, 0, 9. The default is 2200 bytes.



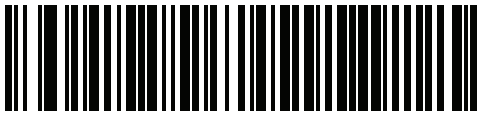
Target Video Frame Size

Video View Finder Image Size

Parameter # 329 (SSI # F0h 49h)

Select the number of 100-byte blocks. Values range from 800 to 12,000 bytes. Selecting a smaller value transmits more frames per second; selecting a larger value increases video quality.

To set the Video View Finder Image Size, scan the bar code below followed by three bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to the 100-byte value from 800 to 12,000 bytes. For example, to select 1500 bytes, enter 0, 1, 5. To select 900 bytes, enter 0, 0, 9. The default is 1700 bytes.



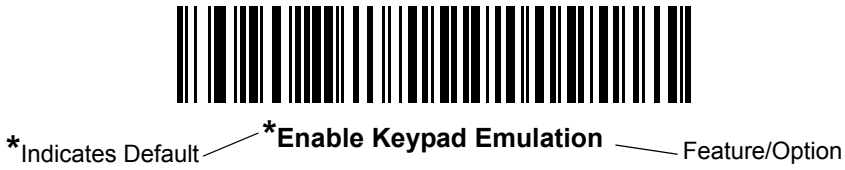
Video View Finder Image Size

CHAPTER 6 USB INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with a USB host. The digital scanner connects directly to a USB host, or a powered USB hub, which powers it. No additional power supply is required.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting a USB Interface

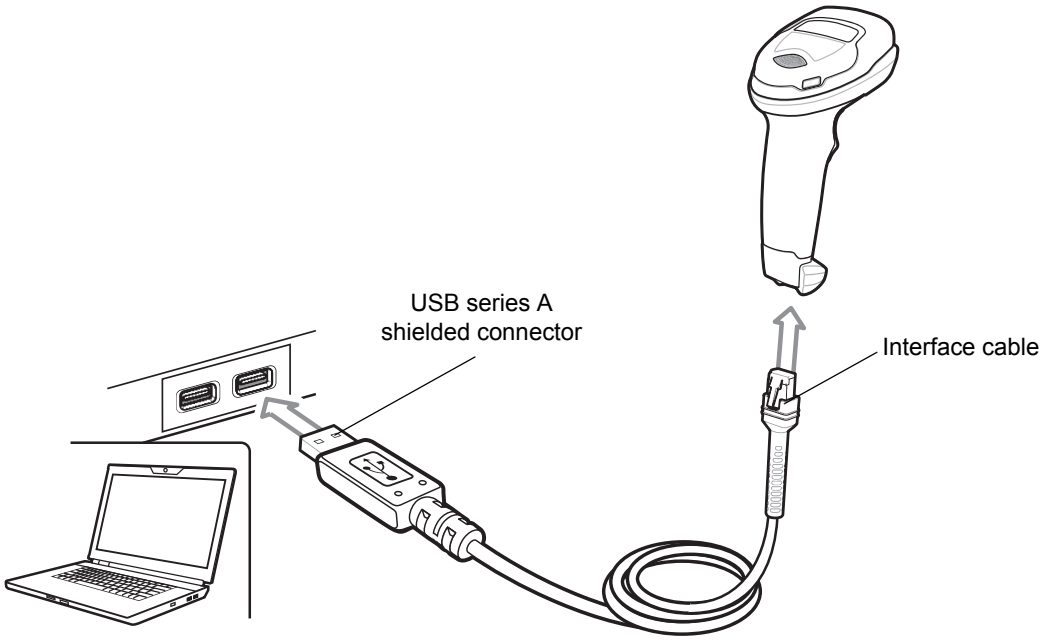


Figure 6-1 *USB Connection.*

NOTE When connecting via USB use the shielded connector cable (e.g., p/n CBA-U21-S07ZAR). Refer to Solution Builder for guidance about cables. If upgrading an LS2208 or LS4208 to a DS4308, the shielded connector cable must be used.

The digital scanner connects with USB-capable hosts including:

- Desktop PCs and notebooks
  - Apple™ iMac, G4, iBooks (North America only)
  - IBM SurePOS terminals
- Sun, IBM, and other network computers that support more than one keyboard.

The following operating systems support the digital scanner through USB:

- Windows® 98, 2000, ME, XP
- MacOS 8.5 - MacOS 10.6

NOTE If using a MacOS, the *USB Keystroke Delay* may need to be set to *Long Delay* (40 msec).

- IBM 4690 OS.

The digital scanner also interfaces with other USB hosts which support USB Human Interface Devices (HID).

To set up the digital scanner:

> ***NOTE*** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 6-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Connect the modular connector of the USB interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner (see *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*).
2. Plug the series A connector in the USB host or hub, or plug the Plus Power connector in an available port of the IBM SurePOS terminal.
3. The digital scanner automatically detects the host interface type and uses the default setting. If the default (*) does not meet your requirements, select another USB device type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *USB Device Type on page 6-5*.
4. On first installation when using Windows, the software prompts to select or install the Human Interface Device driver. To install this driver, provided by Windows, click **Next** through all the choices and click **Finished** on the last choice. The digital scanner powers up during this installation.
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

If problems occur with the system, see *Troubleshooting on page 3-3*.

USB Parameter Defaults

Table 6-1 lists the defaults for USB host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in this chapter.

> ***NOTE*** See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 6-1 *USB Interface Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
USB Host Parameters		
USB Device Type	USB Keyboard HID	*6-5*
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking	Enable	*6-7*
USB Keystroke Delay	No Delay	*6-7*
USB CAPS Lock Override	Disable	*6-8*
USB Ignore Unknown Characters	Enable	*6-8*
USB Convert Unknown to Code 39	Disable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad	Enable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero	Enable	*6-10*
Quick Keypad Emulation	Enable	*6-10*
USB FN1 Substitution	Disable	*6-11*

Table 6-1 *USB Interface Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
Function Key Mapping	Disable	*6-11*
Simulated Caps Lock	Disable	*6-12*
Convert Case	None	*6-12*
USB Static CDC	Enable	*6-13*
Ignore Beep	Enable (Ignore)	*6-14*
Ignore Bar Code Configuration	Enable (Ignore)	*6-14*
USB Polling Interval	3 msec	*6-15*
USB Fast HID	Enable	*6-16*
IBM Specification Version	Version 2.2	*6-17*

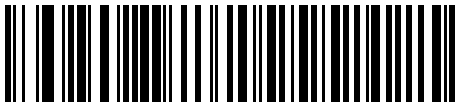
USB Host Parameters

USB Device Type

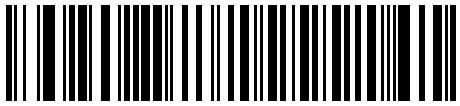
Select the desired USB device type. To select a country keyboard type for the **USB Keyboard HID** host, see *Appendix B, Country Codes*.

✓ ***NOTE*** When changing USB Device Types, the digital scanner automatically resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.

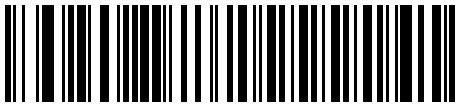
✓ ***NOTE*** Select **IBM Hand-Held USB** to disable data transmission when an IBM register issues a Scan Disable command. Aim, illumination, and decoding is still permitted. Select **IBM OPOS (IBM Hand-Held USB with Full Scan Disable)** to completely shut off the digital scanner when an IBM register issues a Scan Disable command, including aim, illumination, decoding and data transmission.



***USB Keyboard HID**



IBM Table-Top USB



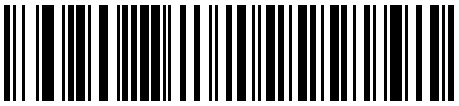
IBM Hand-Held USB

IBM OPOS
(IBM Hand-Held USB with Full Scan Disable)

USB Device Type (continued)

Simple COM Port Emulation

USB CDC Host



SSI over USB CDC

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) without Imaging Interface

✓ ***NOTE*** Before selecting USB CDC Host, install the CDC INF file on the host to ensure the digital scanner does not stall during power up (due to a failure to enumerate USB). If the digital scanner stalls, to recover it:

1. Install the CDC INF file

   or

2. After power-up, hold the trigger for 10 seconds, which allows the digital scanner to power up using an alternate USB configuration. Upon power-up, scan another **USB Device Type**.

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking

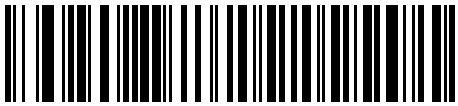
After selecting a SNAPI interface as the USB device type, select whether to enable or disable status handshaking.

***Enable SNAPI Status Handshaking**

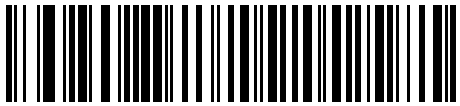
Disable SNAPI Status Handshaking

USB Keystroke Delay

This parameter sets the delay, in milliseconds, between emulated keystrokes. Scan a bar code below to increase the delay when hosts require a slower transmission of data.



***No Delay**



Medium Delay (20 msec)

Long Delay (40 msec)

USB CAPS Lock Override

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID device. Enable this to preserve the case of the data regardless of the state of the **Caps Lock** key. This setting is always enabled for the Japanese, Windows (ASCII) keyboard type and can not be disabled.

Override Caps Lock Key (Enable)

***Do Not Override Caps Lock Key (Disable)**

USB Ignore Unknown Characters

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID device and IBM device. Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters**, for IBM devices, to prevent sending bar codes containing at least one unknown character are to the host, or for USB Keyboard HID devices, this sends the bar code characters up to the unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.

***Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Transmit)**

Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Disable)

USB Convert Unknown to Code 39

This option applies only to the IBM hand-held, IBM table-top, and OPOS devices. Scan a bar code below to enable or disable converting unknown bar code type data to Code 39.

***Disable Convert Unknown to Code 39**

Enable Convert Unknown to Code 39

Emulate Keypad

Enable this to send all characters as ASCII sequences over the numeric keypad. For example ASCII A transmits as “ALT make” 0 6 5 “ALT Break”.

NOTE If your keyboard type is not listed in the country code list (see *Country Codes on page B-1*), disable *Quick Keypad Emulation on page 6-10* and ensure **Emulate Keypad** is enabled.

Disable Keypad Emulation

***Enable Keypad Emulation**

Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero

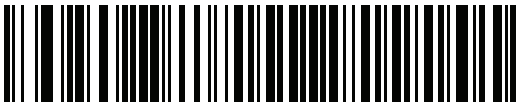
Enable this to send character sequences sent over the numeric keypad as ISO characters which have a leading zero. For example ASCII A transmits as “ALT MAKE” 0 0 6 5 “ALT BREAK”.

Disable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero

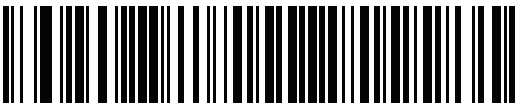
***Enable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero**

Quick Keypad Emulation

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID device when *Emulate Keypad on page 6-9* is enabled. This parameter enables a quicker method of emulation using the numeric keypad where ASCII sequences are only sent for ASCII characters not found on the keyboard. The default value is **Enable**.



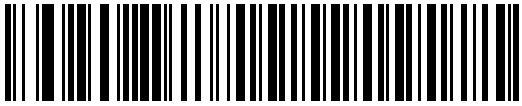
***Enable Quick Keypad Emulation**



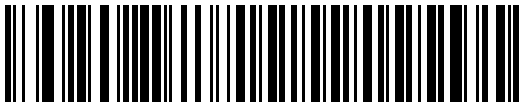
Disable Quick Keypad Emulation

USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID device. Enable this to replace any FN 1 characters in a GS1 128 bar code with a user-selected Key Category and value (see *FN1 Substitution Values on page 4-39* to set the Key Category and Key Value).



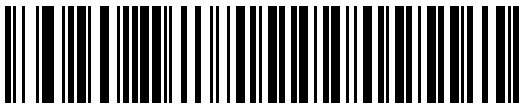
Enable USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution



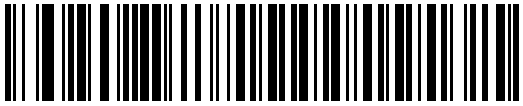
***Disable USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution**

Function Key Mapping

ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as a control-key sequences (see *Table 6-2 on page 6-18*). Enable this parameter to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold entry remain the same whether or not you enable this parameter.



***Disable Function Key Mapping**

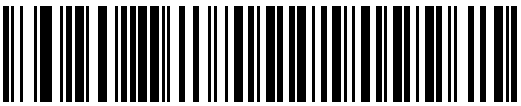


Enable Function Key Mapping

Simulated Caps Lock

Enable this to invert upper and lower case characters on the bar code as if the Caps Lock state is enabled on the keyboard. This inversion occurs regardless of the keyboard's **Caps Lock** state.

✓ ***NOTE*** Simulated Caps Lock applies to ASCII characters only.



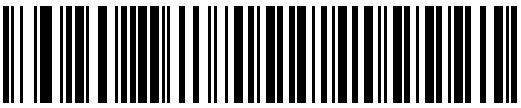
***Disable Simulated Caps Lock**

Enable Simulated Caps Lock

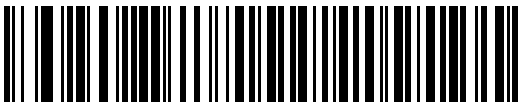
Convert Case

Enable this to convert all bar code data to the selected case.

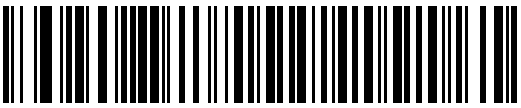
✓ ***NOTE*** Convert Case applies to ASCII characters only.



***No Case Conversion**



Convert All to Upper Case



Convert All to Lower Case

USB Static CDC

When disabled, each device connected consumes another COM port (first device = COM1, second device = COM2, third device = COM3, etc.)

When enabled, each device connects to the same COM port.

***Enable USB Static CDC**

Disable USB Static CDC

Optional USB Parameters

If the configured settings are changed or not saved after restarting the system, scan the following bar codes to override USB interface defaults.

Ignore Beep Directive

Scan one of the following bar codes to honor or ignore a beep directive from the USB host. When enabled, the request is **not** sent to the digital scanner. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.

Disable Ignore Beep Directive

***Enable Ignore Beep Directive**

Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive

Scan one of the following bar codes to honor or ignore a code type enable/disable directive from the USB host. When this parameter is enabled, this request is **not** sent to the digital scanner. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.

Disable Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive

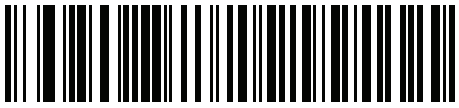
***Enable Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive**

USB Polling Interval

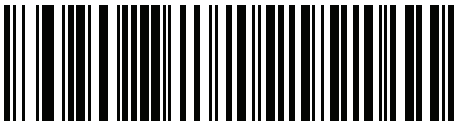
Scan a bar code below to set the polling interval. The polling interval is the rate at which data transmits between the scanner and host computer. A lower number indicates a faster data rate.

NOTE When changing the USB polling interval, the digital scanner restarts and issues a power-up beep sequence.

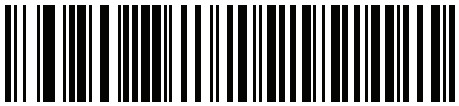
IMPORTANT Ensure the host supports the selected data rate.



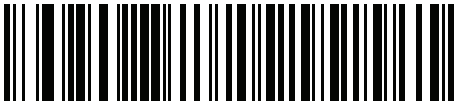
1 msec



2 msec



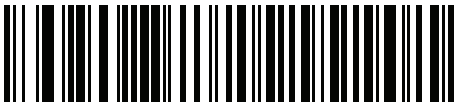
*** 3 msec**



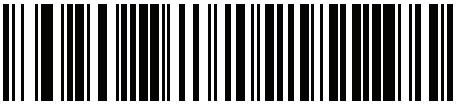
4 msec

5 msec

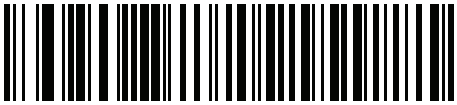
USB Polling Interval (continued)



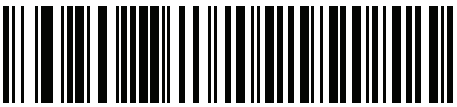
6 msec



7 msec



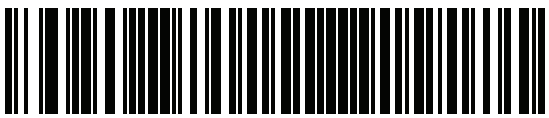
8 msec



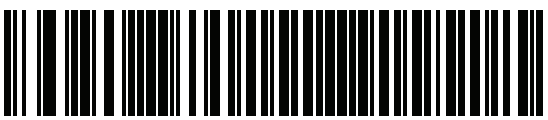
9 msec

USB Fast HID

This option transmits USB HID data at a faster rate.



***Enable**



Disable

IBM Specification Version

The IBM USB interface specification version selected defines how code types are reported over the IBM USB interface.

Original Specification

***Version 2.2**

ASCII Character Set for USB

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1000	%U	CTRL 2
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [/**ESC**[1]
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	`
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-3 *USB ALT Key Character Set*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2064	ALT 2
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table 6-4 *USB GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table 6-4 *USB GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z
Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.	

Table 6-5 *USB F Key Character Set*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F1
5002	F2
5003	F3
5004	F4
5005	F5
5006	F6
5007	F7
5008	F8
5009	F9
5010	F10
5011	F11
5012	F12
5013	F13
5014	F14
5015	F15
5016	F16
5017	F17
5018	F18
5019	F19
5020	F20
5021	F21
5022	F22
5023	F23
5024	F24

Table 6-6 *USB Numeric Keypad Character Set*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table 6-7 *USB Extended Keypad Character Set*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	PgUp
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Down Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

CHAPTER 7 SSI INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes the system requirements of the Simple Serial Interface (SSI), which provides a communications link between Symbol Technologies decoders (e.g., scan engines, slot scanners, hand-held scanners, two-dimensional scanners, hands-free scanners, and RF base stations) and a serial host. It provides the means for the host to control the decoder or scanner.

Communications

All communication between the digital scanner and host occurs over the hardware interface lines using the SSI protocol. Refer to the *Simple Serial Interface Programmer's Guide*, p/n 72-40451-xx, for more information on SSI.

The host and the digital scanner exchange messages in packets. A packet is a collection of bytes framed by the proper SSI protocol formatting bytes. The maximum number of bytes per packet that the SSI protocol allows for any transaction is 257 (255 bytes + 2 byte checksum).

Decode data can be sent as ASCII data (unpacketed), or as part of a larger message (packeted), depending on the digital scanner configuration.

SSI performs the following functions for the host device:

- Maintains a bi-directional interface with the digital scanner
- Allows the host to send commands that control the digital scanner
- Passes data from the digital scanner to a host device in SSI packet format or straight decode message.

The working environment of the SSI consists of a digital scanner, a serial cable which attaches to the host device, and in some instances, a power supply.

SSI transmits all decode data including special formatting (e.g., AIM ID). Parameter settings can control the format of the transmitted data.

The digital scanner can also send parameter information, product identification information, or event codes to the host.

All commands sent between the digital scanner and host must use the format described in the SSI Message Formats section. *SSI Transactions on page 7-3* describes the required sequence of messages in specific cases.

Table 7-1 lists all the SSI opcodes the digital scanner supports. It identifies the SSI partner allowed to send a message of each type. The host transmits opcodes designated type H. The digital scanner transmits type D opcodes, and either partner can transmit Host/Decoder (H/D) types.

Table 7-1 *SSI Commands*

Name	Type	Opcode	Description
AIM_OFF	H	0xC4	Deactivate aim pattern.
AIM_ON	H	0xC5	Activate aim pattern.
BEEP	H	0xE6	Sound the beeper.
CAPABILITIES_REPLY	D	0xD4	Reply to CAPABILITIES_REQUEST; contains a list of the capabilities and commands the decoder supports.
CAPABILITIES_REQUEST	H	0xD3	Request capabilities report from the decoder.
CMD_ACK	H/D	0xD0	Positive acknowledgment of received packet.
CMD_NAK	H/D	0xD1	Negative acknowledgment of received packet.
DECODE_DATA	D	0xF3	Decode data in SSI packet format.
EVENT	D	0xF6	Event indicated by associated event code.
LED_OFF	H	0xE8	De-activate LED output.
LED_ON	H	0xE7	Activate LED output.
PARAM_DEFAULTS	H	0xC8	Set parameter default values.
PARAM_REQUEST	H	0xC7	Request values of certain parameters.
PARAM_SEND	H/D	0xC6	Send parameter values.
REPLY_ID	D	0xA6	Reply to REQUEST_ID; contains decoder's serial number.
REPLY_REVISION	D	0xA4	Reply to REQUEST_REVISION contains decoder's software/hardware configuration.
REQUEST_ID	H	0xA3	Request the decoder's serial number.
REQUEST_REVISION	H	0xA3	Request the decoder's configuration.
SCAN_DISABLE	H	0xEA	Prevent the operator from scanning bar codes.
SCAN_ENABLE	H	0xE9	Permit bar code scanning.
SLEEP	H	0xEB	Request to place the decoder into low power.
START_DECODE	H	0xE4	Tell decoder to attempt to decode a bar code.
STOP_DECODE	H	0xE5	Tell decoder to abort a decode attempt.
WAKEUP	H	N/A	Wakeup decoder after it has entered low power mode.

For details of the SSI protocol, refer to the *Simple Serial Interface Programmer's Guide* (72-40451-xx).

SSI Transactions

General Data Transactions

ACK/NAK Handshaking

If you enable ACK/NAK handshaking, all packeted messages must have a CMD_ACK or CMD_NAK response, unless the command description states otherwise. This parameter is enabled by default. Symbol Technologies recommends leaving this handshaking enabled to provide feedback to the host. Raw decode data and WAKEUP do not use ACK/NAK handshaking since they are not packeted data.

Following is an example of a problem which can occur if you disable ACK/NAK handshaking:

- The host sends a PARAM_SEND message to the digital scanner to change the baud rate from 9600 to 19200.
- The digital scanner cannot interpret the message.
- The digital scanner does not implement the change the host requested.
- The host assumes that the parameter change occurred and acts accordingly.
- Communication is lost because the change did not occur on both sides.

If you enable ACK/NAK handshaking, the following occurs:

- The host sends a PARAM_SEND message.
- The digital scanner cannot interpret the message.
- The digital scanner CMD_NAKs the message.
- The host resends the message.
- The digital scanner receives the message successfully, responds with CMD_ACK, and implements parameter changes.

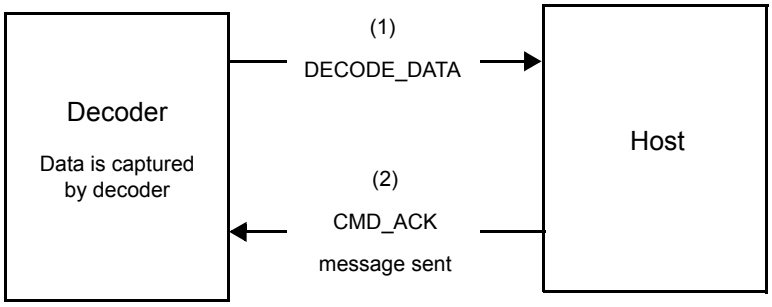
Transfer of Decode Data

The Decode Data Packet Format parameter controls how decode data is sent to the host. Set this parameter to send the data in a DECODE_DATA packet. Clear this parameter to transmit the data as raw ASCII data.

NOTE When transmitting decode data as raw ASCII data, ACK/NAK handshaking does not apply regardless of the state of the ACK/NAK handshaking parameter.

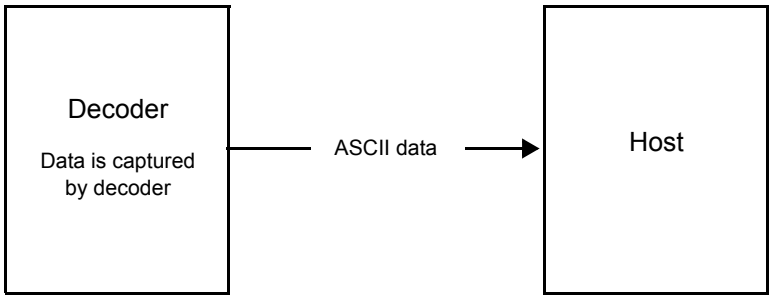
ACK/NAK Enabled and Packeted Data

The digital scanner sends a DECODE_DATA message after a successful decode. The digital scanner waits for a programmable time-out for a CMD_ACK response. If it does not receive the response, the digital scanner tries to send two more times before issuing a host transmission error. If the digital scanner receives a CMD_NAK from the host, it may attempt a retry depending on the cause field of the CMD_NAK message.



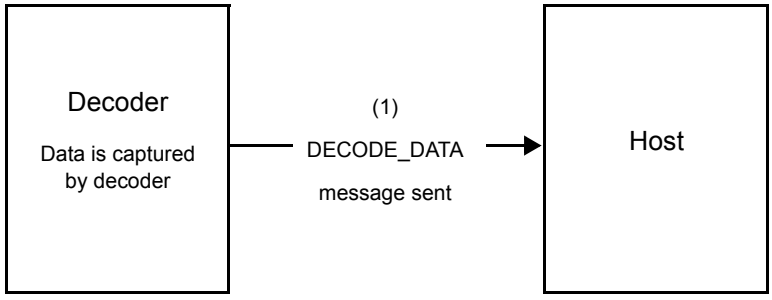
ACK/NAK Enabled and Unpacketed ASCII Data

Even though the ACK/NAK handshaking is enabled, no handshaking occurs because the handshaking applies only to packeted data. In this example the **packeted_decode** parameter is disabled.



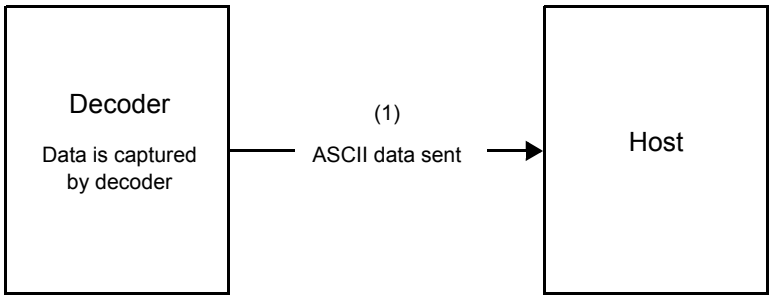
ACK/NAK Disabled and Packeted DECODE_DATA

In this example ACK/NAK does not occur even though **packeted_decode** is enabled because the ACK/NAK handshaking parameter is disabled.



ACK/NAK Disabled and Unpacketed ASCII Data

Data captured by the digital scanner is sent to the host.



Communication Summary

RTS/CTS Lines

All communication must use RTS/CTS handshaking as described in the *Simple Serial Interface Programmer's Guide*, p/n 72-40451-xx. If hardware handshaking is disabled or bypassed, the WAKEUP command must be sent prior to all other communications, or the first byte of a communication message may be lost during the digital scanner wakeup sequence.

ACK/NAK Option

Enable or disable ACK/NAK handshaking. This handshaking is enabled by default and Symbol Technologies recommends leaving it enabled. Disabling this handshaking can cause communication problems, as handshaking is the only acknowledgment that a message was received, and if it was received correctly. ACK/NAK is not used with unpacketed decode data regardless of whether or not it is enabled.

Number of Data Bits

All communication with the digital scanner must use 8-bit data.

Serial Response Time-out

The Serial Response Time-out parameter determines how long to wait for a handshaking response before trying again, or aborting any further attempts. Set the same value for both the host and digital scanner.

NOTE You can temporarily change the Serial Response Time-out when the host takes longer to process an ACK or longer data string. Symbol Technologies does not recommend frequent permanent changes due to limited write cycles of non-volatile memory.

Retries

When sending data, the host should resend twice after the initial send if the digital scanner does not respond with an ACK or NAK (if ACK/NAK handshaking is enabled), or response data (e.g., PARAM_SEND, REPLY_REVISION). If the digital scanner replies with a NAK RESEND, the host resends the data. All resent messages must have the resend bit set in the Status byte.

The digital scanner resends data two times after the initial send if the host fails to reply with an ACK or NAK (if ACK/NAK handshaking is enabled).

Baud Rate, Stop Bits, Parity, Response Time-out, ACK/NAK Handshake

If you use PARAM_SEND to change these serial parameters, the ACK response to the PARAM_SEND uses the previous values for these parameters. The new values then take effect for the next transaction.

Errors

The digital scanner issues a communication error when:

- The CTS line is asserted when the digital scanner tries to transmit, and is still asserted on each of 2 successive retries
- Failure to receive an ACK or NAK after initial transmit and two resends.

Things to Remember When Using SSI Communication

When not using hardware handshaking, space messages sufficiently apart. The host must not communicate with the digital scanner if the digital scanner is transmitting.

When using hardware handshaking, frame each message properly with the handshaking signals. Do not try to send two commands within the same handshaking frame.

There is a permanent/temporary bit in the PARAM_SEND message. Removing power from the digital scanner discards temporary changes. Permanent changes are written to non-volatile memory. Frequent changes shorten the life of the non-volatile memory.

Using Time Delay to Low Power Mode with SSI

Time Delay to Low Power Mode on page 4-17 provides bar codes to select a general time delay. To program a more specific delay value, use an SSI command according to *Table 7-2*.

Table 7-2 *Values for Selecting Time Delay to Low Power*

Value	Timeout	Value	Timeout	Value	Timeout	Value	Timeout
0x00	15 Mins	0x10	1 Sec	0x20	1 Min	0x30	1 Hour
0x01	30 Mins	0x11	1 Sec	0x21	1 Min	0x31	1 Hour
0x02	60 Mins	0x12	2 Secs	0x22	2 Mins	0x32	2 Hours
0x03	90 Mins	0x13	3 Secs	0x23	3 Mins	0x33	3 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x14	4 Secs	0x24	4 Mins	0x34	4 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x15	5 Secs	0x25	5 Mins	0x35	5 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x16	6 Secs	0x26	6 Mins	0x36	6 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x17	7 Secs	0x27	7 Mins	0x37	7 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x18	8 Secs	0x28	8 Mins	0x38	8 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x19	9 Secs	0x29	9 Mins	0x39	9 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1A	10 Secs	0x2A	10 Mins	0x3A	10 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1B	15 Secs	0x2B	15 Mins	0x3B	15 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1C	20 Secs	0x2C	20 Mins	0x3C	20 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1D	30 Secs	0x2D	30 Mins	0x3D	30 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1E	45 Secs	0x2E	45 Mins	0x3E	45 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1F	60 Secs	0x2F	60 Mins	0x3F	60 Hours

CAUTION With hardware handshaking disabled, the PL3307 wakes from low power mode upon receiving a character. However, the PL3307 does not process this character or any others it receives during the 7 ms period following wakeup. Wait at least 7 ms after wakeup to send valid characters.

Encapsulation of RSM Commands/Responses over SSI

The SSI protocol allows the host to send a command that is variable in length up to 255 bytes. Although there is a provision in the protocol to multi-packet commands from the host, the scan engine does not support this. The host must fragment packets using the provisions in the RSM protocol.

Command Structure

Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Length (not including the checksum)							
1	SSI_MGMT_COMMAND (0x80)							
2	Message Source (4 - Host)							
3	Reserved (0)				Reserved (0)	Reserved (0)	Cont'd packet	Retransmit
4	Payload data (see the following example)							
...								
Length -1								
Length	2's complement checksum (MSB)							
Length +1	2's complement checksum (LSB)							

The expected response in the positive case is SSI_MGMT_COMMAND which may be a multi-packet response. For devices that do not support the SSI_MGMT_COMMAND, the response is the standard SSI_NAK.

Response Structure

Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Length (not including the checksum)							
1	SSI_MGMT_COMMAND (0x80)							
2	Message Source (0 - Decoder)							
3	Reserved (0)				Reserved (0)	Reserved (0)	Cont'd packet	Retransmit
4	Payload data (see the following example)							
...								
Length -1								
Length	2's complement checksum (MSB)							
Length +1	2's complement checksum (LSB)							

Example Transaction

The following example illustrates how to retrieve diagnostic information (Diagnostic Testing and Reporting (Attribute #10061) decimal) from the engine using encapsulation of RSM commands over SSI. Before sending any RSM command, the host must send the RSM Get Packet Size command to query the packet size supported by the device.

Command from Host to Query Packet Size Supported by Device

0A 80 04 00 00 06 20 00 FF FF FD 4E

Where:

- 0A 80 04 00 is encapsulation of RSM commands over SSI command header
- 00 06 20 00 FF FF is RSM Get Packet Size command
- FD 4E is SSI command checksum

Response from Device with Packet Size Information

0C 80 00 00 00 08 20 00 00 F0 00 F0 FD 6C

Where:

- 0C 80 00 00 is encapsulation of RSM command over SSI command header
- 00 08 20 00 00 F0 00 F0 is RSM Get Packet Size response
- FD 6C is SSI response checksum

Command from Host to Retrieve Diagnostic Information

0C 80 04 00 00 08 02 00 27 4D 42 00 FE B0

Where:

- 0C 80 04 00 is encapsulation of RSM commands over SSI command header
- 00 08 02 00 27 4D 42 00 is attribute Get command requesting attribute 10061 decimal
- FE B0 is SSI command checksum

Response from Device with Diagnostic Information

21 80 00 00 00 1D 02 00 27 4D 41 01 42 00 0E 00 00 00 00 01 03 02 03 03 03 04 03 05 03 06 03 FF FF FC 15

Where:

- 21 80 00 00 00 1D 02 00 27 4D 41 01 42 00 0E 00 00 is encapsulation of RSM responses over SSI command header
- 00 00 01 03 02 03 03 03 04 03 05 03 06 03 is attribute Get response which includes diagnostic report value
- FF FF is attribute Get response, packet termination
- FC 15 is SSI response checksum

Simple Serial Interface Default Parameters

This section describes how to set up the digital scanner with an SSI host. When using SSI, program the digital scanner via bar code menu or SSI hosts commands.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Table 7-3 lists the defaults for the SSI host. There are two ways to change the default values:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan the **Restore Defaults* bar code on *page 4-5*.
- Download data through the device's serial port using SSI. Hexadecimal parameter numbers appear in this chapter below the parameter title, and options appear in parenthesis beneath the accompanying bar codes. Refer to the *Simple Serial Interface (SSI) Programmer's Guide* for detailed instructions for changing parameters using this method.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 7-3 *SSI Default Table*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Select SSI Host	N/A	N/A	N/A	*7-11*
Baud Rate	156	9Ch	9600	*7-12*
Parity	158	9Eh	None	*7-13*
Check Parity	151	97h	Disable	*7-14*
Stop Bits	157	9Dh	1	*7-14*
Software Handshaking	159	9Fh	ACK/NAK	*7-15*
Host RTS Line State	154	9Ah	Low	*7-16*
Decode Data Packet Format	238	EEh	Send Raw Decode Data	*7-16*
Host Serial Response Time-out	155	9Bh	2 sec	*7-17*
Host Character Time-out	239	EFh	200 msec	*7-18*

Table 7-3 *SSI Default Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Multipacket Option	334	F0h 4Eh	Option 1	*7-19*
Interpacket Delay	335	F0h 4Fh	0 ms	*7-20*
Event Reporting				
Decode Event	256	F0h 00h	Disable	*7-21*
Boot Up Event	258	F0h 02h	Disable	*7-22*
Parameter Event	259	F0h 03h	Disable	*7-22*

NOTE SSI interprets Prefix, Suffix1, and Suffix2 values listed in *Table H-1 on page H-1* differently than other interfaces. SSI does not recognize key categories, only the 3-digit decimal value. The default value of 7013 is interpreted as CR only.

SSI Host Parameters

Select SSI Host

To select SSI as the host interface, scan the following bar code.

SSI Host

Baud Rate

Parameter # 156 (SSI # 9Ch)

Baud rate is the number of bits of data transmitted per second. Set the digital scanner's baud rate to match the baud rate setting of the host device. Otherwise, data may not reach the host device or may reach it in distorted form.

***Baud Rate 9600**
(6)

Baud Rate 19,200
(7)

Baud Rate 38,400
(8)

Baud Rate 57,600
(10)

Baud Rate 115,200
(11)

Baud Rate 230,400
(12)

Baud Rate (continued)

Baud Rate 460,800
(13)

Baud Rate 921,600
(14)

Parity

Parameter # 158 (SSI # 9Eh)

A parity check bit is the most significant bit of each ASCII coded character. Select the parity type according to host device requirements.

- Select **Odd** parity and the parity bit has a value 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that an odd number of 1 bits is contained in the coded character.
- Select **Even** parity and the parity bit has a value 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that an even number of 1 bits is contained in the coded character.
- If no parity is required, select **None**.

Odd
(2)

Even
(1)

***None**
(0)

Check Parity

Parameter # 151 (SSI # 97h)

Select whether or not to check the parity of received characters. Use the Parity parameter to select the type of parity.

***Do Not Check Parity**
(0)

Check Parity
(1)

Stop Bits

Parameter # 157 (SSI # 9Dh)

The stop bit(s) at the end of each transmitted character marks the end of transmission of one character and prepares the receiving (host) device for the next character in the serial data stream. Set the number of stop bits (one or two) to match host device requirements.

***1 Stop Bit**
(1)

2 Stop Bits
(2)

Software Handshaking

Parameter # 159 (SSI # 9Fh)

This parameter offers control of data transmission in addition to the control hardware handshaking offers. Hardware handshaking is always enabled; you cannot disable it.

- **Disable ACK/NAK Handshaking**: When this option is selected, the digital scanner neither generates nor expects ACK/NAK handshaking packets.
- **Enable ACK/NAK Handshaking**: When this option is selected, after transmitting data, the digital scanner expects either an ACK or NAK response from the host. The digital scanner also ACKs or NAKs messages from the host.

  The digital scanner waits up to the programmable Host Serial Response Time-out to receive an ACK or NAK. If the digital scanner does not get a response in this time, it resends its data up to two times before discarding the data and declaring a transmit error.

Disable ACK/NAK
(0)

***Enable ACK/NAK**
(1)

Host RTS Line State

Parameter # 154 (SSI # 9Ah)

This parameter sets the expected idle state of the Serial Host RTS line.

The SSI Interface is used with host applications which also implement the SSI protocol. However, you can use the digital scanner in a "scan-and-transmit" mode to communicate with any standard serial communication software on a host PC (see *Decode Data Packet Format on page 7-16*). If transmission errors occur in this mode, the host PC may be asserting hardware handshaking lines which interfere with the SSI protocol. Scan the **Host: RTS High** bar code to address this problem.

***Host: RTS Low**
(0)

Host: RTS High
(1)

Decode Data Packet Format

Parameter # 238 (SSI # EEh)

This parameter selects whether to transmit decoded data in raw format (unpacketed), or with the packet format defined by the serial protocol.

Selecting the raw format disables ACK/NAK handshaking for decode data.

***Send Raw Decode Data**
(0)

Send Packeted Decode Data
(1)

Host Serial Response Time-out

Parameter # 155 (SSI # 9Bh)

This parameter specifies how long the digital scanner waits for an ACK or NAK before resending. Also, if the digital scanner wants to send, and the host has already been granted permission to send, the digital scanner waits for the designated time-out before declaring an error.

To set the delay period (options are 2, 5, 7.5, or 9,9 seconds), scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE Other values are available via SSI command.

***Low - 2 Seconds**
(20)

Medium - 5 Seconds
(50)

High - 7.5 Seconds
(75)

Maximum - 9.9 Seconds
(99)

Host Character Time-out

Parameter # 239 (SSI # EFh)

This parameter determines the maximum time the digital scanner waits between characters transmitted by the host before discarding the received data and declaring an error.

To set the delay period (options are 200, 500, 750, or 990 ms), scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE Other values are available via SSI command.

***Low - 200 ms**
(20)

Medium - 500 ms
(50)

High - 750 ms
(75)

Maximum - 990 ms
(99)

Multipacket Option

Parameter # 334 (SSI # F0h 4Eh)

This parameter controls ACK/NAK handshaking for multi-packet transmissions.

- **Multi-Packet Option 1**: The host sends an ACK / NAK for each data packet during a multi-packet transmission.
- **Multi-Packet Option 2**: The digital scanner sends data packets continuously, with no ACK/NAK handshaking to pace the transmission. The host, if overrun, can use hardware handshaking to temporarily delay digital scanner transmissions. At the end of transmission, the digital scanner waits for a CMD_ACK or CMD_NAK.
- **Multi-Packet Option 3**: Option 3 is the same as option 2 with the addition of a programmable interpacket delay.

***Multipacket Option 1**
(0)

Multipacket Option 2
(1)

Multipacket Option 3
(2)

Interpacket Delay

Parameter # 335 (SSI # F0h 4Fh)

This parameter specifies the interpacket delay if you selected **Multipacket Option 3**.

To set the delay period (options are 0, 25, 50, 75, or 99 ms), scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE Other values are available via SSI command.

***Minimum - 0 ms**
(0)

Low - 25 ms
(25)

Medium - 50 ms
(50)

High - 75 ms
(75)

Maximum - 99 ms
(99)

Event Reporting

The host can request the digital scanner to provide certain information (events) relative to the digital scanner's behavior. Enable or disable the events listed in *Table 7-4* and on the following pages by scanning the appropriate bar codes.

Table 7-4 *Event Codes*

Event Class	Event	Code Reported
Decode Event	Non parameter decode	0x01
Boot Up Event	System power-up	0x03
Parameter Event	Parameter entry error Parameter stored Defaults set (and parameter event is enabled by default) Number expected	0x07 0x08 0x0A 0x0F

Decode Event

Parameter # 256 (SSI # F0h 00h)

When enabled, the digital scanner generates a message to the host upon a successful bar code decode. When disabled, no notification is sent.

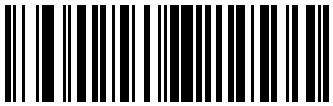
Enable Decode Event
(1)

***Disable Decode Event**
(0)

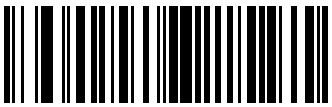
Boot Up Event

Parameter # 258 (SSI # F0h 02h)

When enabled, the digital scanner generates a message to the host whenever power is applied. When disabled, no notification is sent.



Enable Boot Up Event
(1)

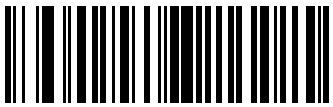


***Disable Boot Up Event**
(0)

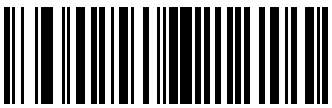
Parameter Event

Parameter # 259 (SSI # F0h 03h)

When enabled, the digital scanner generates a message to the host when one of the events specified in *Table 7-4 on page 7-21* occurs. When disabled, no notification is sent.



Enable Parameter Event
(1)



***Disable Parameter Event**
(0)

CHAPTER 8 RS-232 INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with an RS-232 host. Use the RS-232 interface to connect the digital scanner to point-of-sale devices, host computers, or other devices with an available RS-232 port (e.g., com port).

If your host does not appear in *Table 8-2*, refer to the documentation for the host device to set communication parameters to match the host.

✓ ***NOTE*** The digital scanner uses TTL RS-232 signal levels, which interface with most system architectures. For system architectures requiring RS-232C signal levels, Symbol Technologies offers different cables providing TTL-to-RS-232C conversion. Contact Symbol Technologies support for more information.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

* Indicates default — ***Baud Rate 9600** — Feature/Option

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting an RS-232 Interface

Connect the digital scanner directly to the host computer.

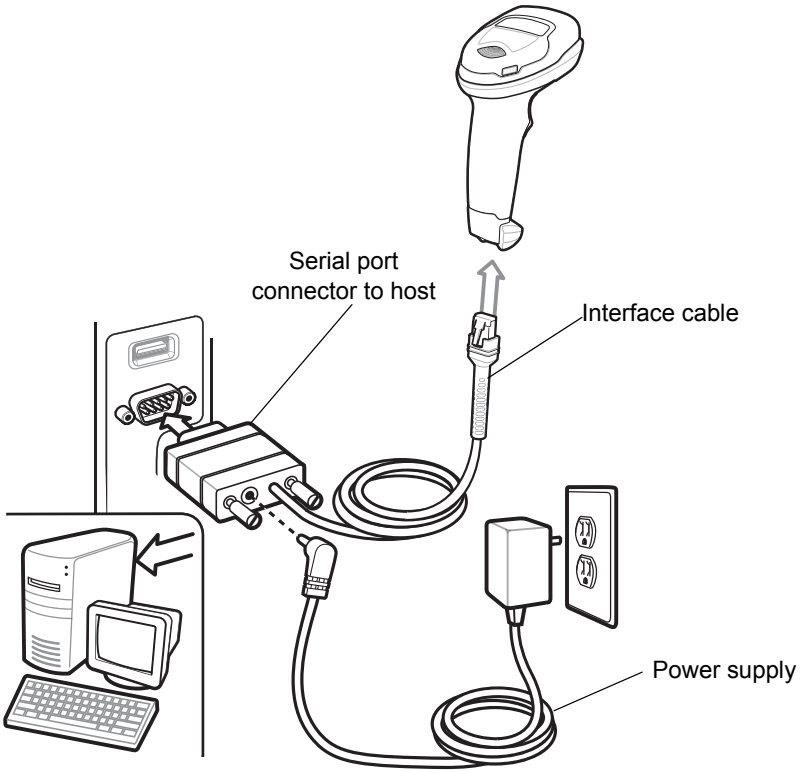


Figure 8-1 *RS-232 Direct Connection*

NOTE Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 8-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the RS-232 interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner (see *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*).
2. Connect the other end of the RS-232 interface cable to the serial port on the host.
3. Connect the power supply to the serial connector end of the RS-232 interface cable. Plug the power supply into an appropriate outlet.
4. The digital scanner automatically detects the host interface type and uses the default setting. If the default (*) does not meet your requirements, select another RS-232 host type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *RS-232 Host Types on page 8-6*.
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

RS-232 Parameter Defaults

Table 8-1 lists the defaults for RS-232 host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the RS-232 Host Parameters section beginning on page *8-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 8-1 *RS-232 Host Default Table*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
RS-232 Host Parameters		
RS-232 Host Types	Standard	*8-6*
Baud Rate	9600	*8-8*
Parity Type	None	*8-9*
Stop Bits	1 Stop Bit	*8-10*
Data Bits	8-Bit	*8-10*
Check Receive Errors	Enable	*8-11*
Hardware Handshaking	None	*8-11*
Software Handshaking	None	*8-13*
Host Serial Response Time-out	2 Sec	*8-15*
RTS Line State	Low RTS	*8-16*
Beep on <BEL>	Disable	*8-16*
Intercharacter Delay	0 msec	*8-17*
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options	Normal Operation	*8-18*
Ignore Unknown Characters	Send Bar Code	*8-18*
Note: The DS4308 supports one stop bit only.		

RS-232 Host Parameters

Various RS-232 hosts use their own parameter default settings. Selecting standard, ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron, or Common Use Terminal Equipment (CUTE-LP/LG bar code readers) sets the defaults listed in *Table 8-2*.

Table 8-2 *Terminal Specific RS-232*

Parameter	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
Transmit Code ID	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data Transmission Format	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/Suffix
Suffix	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	ETX (1002)	CR (1013)	CR (1013) ETX (1003)
Baud Rate	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600
Parity	Even	None	Odd	Odd	Even	None	Even
Hardware Handshaking	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	RTS/CTS Option 3	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	None	None
Software Handshaking	None	None	None	None	ACK/NAK	None	None
Serial Response Time-out	9.9 Sec.	2 Sec.	None	None	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.
Stop Bit Select	One	One	One	One	One	One	One
ASCII Format	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit
Beep On <BEL>	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable
RTS Line State	High	Low	Low	Low = No data to send	Low	High	High
Prefix	None	None	None	None	STX (1003)	None	STX (1002)

In the Nixdorf Mode B, if CTS is low, scanning is disabled. When CTS is high, scanning is enabled.
If you scan Nixdorf Mode B without connecting the digital scanner to the proper host, it may appear unable to scan. If this happens, scan a different RS-232 host type within 5 seconds of cycling power to the digital scanner.
The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan **Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning (1) on page 4-6*, then change the host selection.

RS-232 Host Parameters (continued)

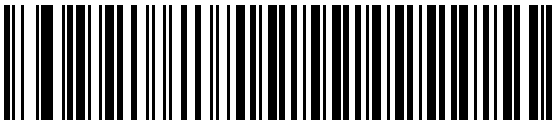
Selecting ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron, or Common Use Terminal Equipment (CUTE-LP/LG bar code readers) enables the transmission of code ID characters listed in *Table 8-3*. These code ID characters are not programmable and are separate from the Transmit Code ID feature. Do not enable the Transmit Code ID feature for these terminals.

Table 8-3 *Terminal Specific Code ID Characters*

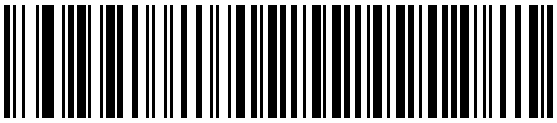
Code Type	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/ OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
UPC-A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
UPC-E	E	E	C	C	C	E	None
EAN-8/JAN-8	FF	FF	B	B	B	FF	None
EAN-13/JAN-13	F	F	A	A	A	F	A
Code 39	C <len>	None	M	M	M <len>	C <len>	3
Code 39 Full ASCII	None	None	M	M	None	None	3
Codabar	N <len>	None	N	N	N <len>	N <len>	None
Code 128	L <len>	None	K	K	K <len>	L <len>	5
I 2 of 5	I <len>	None	I	I	I <len>	I <len>	1
Code 93	None	None	L	L	L <len>	None	None
D 2 of 5	H <len>	None	H	H	H <len>	H <len>	2
GS1-128	L <len>	None	P	P	P <len>	L <len>	5
MSI	None	None	O	O	O <len>	None	None
Bookland EAN	F	F	A	A	A	F	None
Trioptic	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
Code 11	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
IATA	H<len>	None	H	H	H<len>	H<len>	2
Code 32	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
GS1 Databar Variants	None	None	E	E	None	None	None
PDF417	None	None	Q	Q	None	None	6
Data Matrix	None	None	R	R	None	None	4
QR Codes	None	None	U	U	None	None	7
Aztec/Aztec Rune	None	None	V	V	None	None	8
MAXICODE	None	None	T	T	None	None	None
microPDF	None	None	S	S	None	None	6

RS-232 Host Types

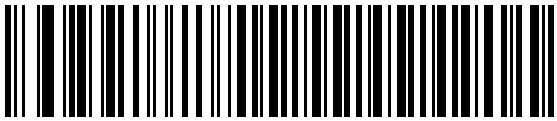
To select an RS-232 host interface, scan one of the following bar codes.



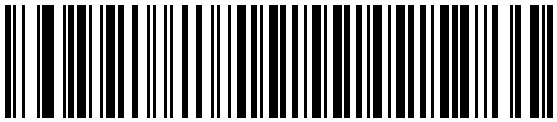
*** Standard RS-232**[1]



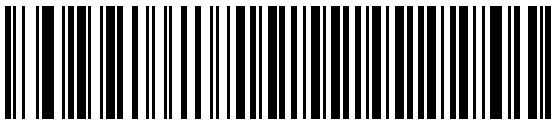
ICL RS-232



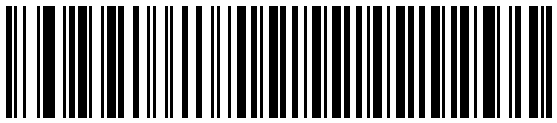
Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode A



Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode B



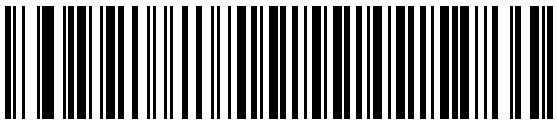
Olivetti ORS4500



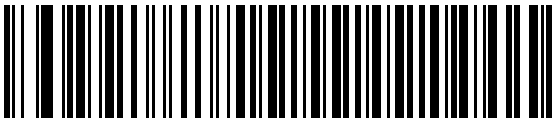
Omron

[1]Scanning Standard RS-232 activates the RS-232 driver, but does not change port settings (e.g., parity, data bits, handshaking). Selecting another RS-232 host type bar code changes these settings.

RS-232 Host Types (continued)



OPOS/JPOS



Fujitsu RS-232

CUTE [1]

[1]The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan *Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning (1) on page 4-6, then change the host selection.

Baud Rate

Baud rate is the number of bits of data transmitted per second. Set the digital scanner's baud rate to match the baud rate setting of the host device. Otherwise, data may not reach the host device or may reach it in distorted form.

NOTE The digital scanner does not support baud rates below 9600.

*** Baud Rate 9600**

Baud Rate 19,200

Baud Rate 38,400

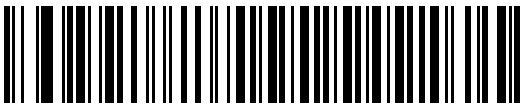
Baud Rate 57,600

Baud Rate 115,200

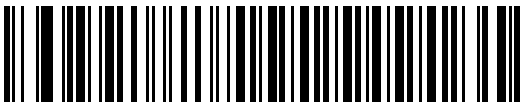
Parity

A parity check bit is the most significant bit of each ASCII coded character. Select the parity type according to host device requirements.

- Select **Odd** parity to set the parity bit value to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an odd number of 1 bits.
- Select **Even** parity to set the parity bit value is set to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an even number of 1 bits.
- Select **None** when no parity bit is required.



Odd



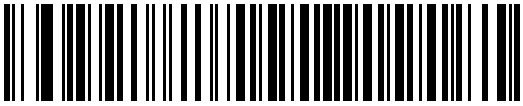
Even

*** None**

Stop Bit Select

The stop bit(s) at the end of each transmitted character marks the end of transmission of one character and prepares the receiving device for the next character in the serial data stream. Select the number of stop bits (one or two) based on the number the receiving terminal is programmed to accommodate. Set the number of stop bits to match host device requirements.

***1 Stop Bit**

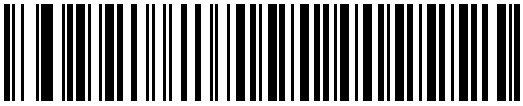


2 Stop Bits

Data Bits

This parameter allows the digital scanner to interface with devices requiring a 7-bit or 8-bit ASCII protocol.

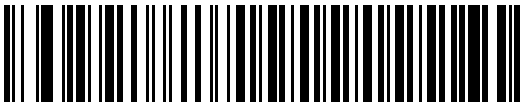
7-Bit



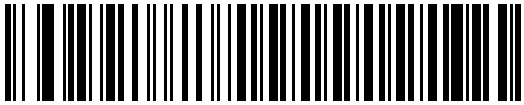
*** 8-Bit**

Check Receive Errors

Select whether or not to check the parity, framing, and overrun of received characters. The parity value of received characters is verified against the parity parameter selected above.



*** Check For Received Errors**



Do Not Check For Received Errors

Hardware Handshaking

The data interface consists of an RS-232 port designed to operate either with or without the hardware handshaking lines, *Request to Send* (RTS), and *Clear to Send* (CTS).

Disable Standard RTS/CTS handshaking to transmit scan data as it becomes available. Select Standard RTS/CTS handshaking to transmit scan data according to the following sequence:

- The digital scanner reads the CTS line for activity. If CTS is asserted, the scanner waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out for the host to de-assert the CTS line. If, after Host Serial Response Time-out (default), the CTS line is still asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error, and discards any scanned data.
- When the CTS line is de-asserted, the digital scanner asserts the RTS line and waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out for the host to assert CTS. When the host asserts CTS, the scanner transmits data. If, after Host Serial Response Time-out (default), the CTS line is not asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error, and discards the data.
- When data transmission completes, the digital scanner de-asserts RTS 10 msec after sending the last character.
- The host should respond by negating CTS. The digital scanner checks for a de-asserted CTS upon the next transmission of data.

During the transmission of data, the CTS line should be asserted. If CTS is deasserted for more than 50 ms between characters, the digital scanner aborts transmission, sounds a transmission error, and discards the data.

If this communication sequence fails, the digital scanner issues an error indication. In this case, the data is lost and must be rescanned.

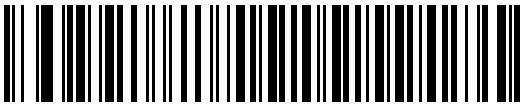
If hardware handshaking and software handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

✓ ***NOTE*** The DTR signal is jumpered to the active state.

Hardware Handshaking (continued)

- **None**: Scan this bar code to disable hardware handshaking.
- **Standard RTS/CTS**: Scan this bar code to select Standard RTS/CTS Hardware Handshaking.
- **RTS/CTS Option 1**: If you select RTS/CTS Option 1, the digital scanner asserts RTS before transmitting and ignores the state of CTS. The scanner de-asserts RTS when the transmission completes.
- **RTS/CTS Option 2**: If you select Option 2, RTS is always high or low (user-programmed logic level). However, the digital scanner waits for CTS to be asserted before transmitting data. If CTS is not asserted within Host Serial Response Time-out (default), the scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.
- **RTS/CTS Option 3**: If you select Option 3, the digital scanner asserts RTS prior to any data transmission, regardless of the state of CTS. The scanner waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out (default) for CTS to be asserted. If CTS is not asserted during this time, the scanner issues an error indication and discards the data. The digital scanner de-asserts RTS when transmission is complete.

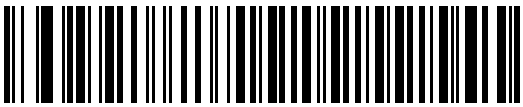
*** None**



Standard RTS/CTS

RTS/CTS Option 1

RTS/CTS Option 2



RTS/CTS Option 3

Software Handshaking

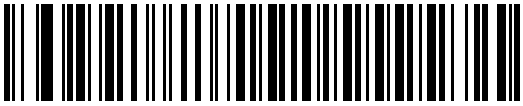
This parameter offers control of the data transmission process in addition to, or instead of, that offered by hardware handshaking. There are five options.

If software handshaking and hardware handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

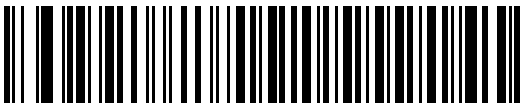
- **None**: Select this to transmit data immediately. The digital scanner expects no response from the host.
- **ACK/NAK**: If you select this option, after transmitting data, the digital scanner expects either an ACK or NAK response from the host. When it receives a NAK, the scanner transmits the same data again and waits for either an ACK or NAK. After three unsuccessful attempts to send data after receiving NAKs, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.

  The digital scanner waits up to the programmable Host Serial Response Time-out to receive an ACK or NAK. If the scanner does not get a response in this time, it issues an error indication and discards the data. There are no retries when a time-out occurs.
- **ENQ**: If you select this option, the digital scanner waits for an ENQ character from the host before transmitting data. If it does not receive an ENQ within the Host Serial Response Time-out, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data. The host must transmit an ENQ character at least every Host Serial Response Time-out to prevent transmission errors.
- **ACK/NAK with ENQ**: This combines the two previous options. For re-transmissions of data, due to a NAK from the host, an additional ENQ is not required.
- **XON/XOFF**: An XOFF character turns the digital scanner transmission off until the scanner receives an XON character. There are two situations for XON/XOFF:
  - The digital scanner receives an XOFF before has data to send. When the scanner has data to send, it waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out for an XON character before transmission. If it does not receive the XON within this time, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.
  - The digital scanner receives an XOFF during a transmission. Data transmission then stops after sending the current byte. When the digital scanner receives an XON character, it sends the rest of the data message. The digital scanner waits indefinitely for the XON.

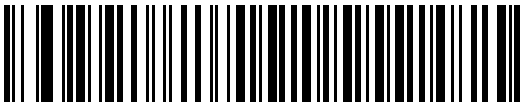
Software Handshaking (continued)



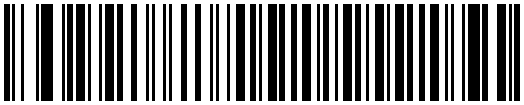
* None



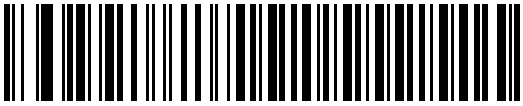
ACK/NAK



ENQ



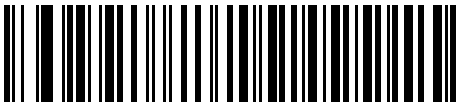
ACK/NAK with ENQ



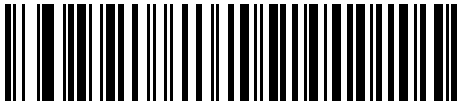
XON/XOFF

Host Serial Response Time-out

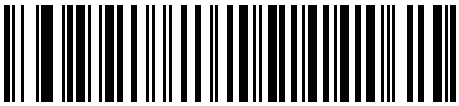
This parameter specifies how long the digital scanner waits for an ACK, NAK, or CTS before determining that a transmission error occurred. This only applies when in one of the ACK/NAK software handshaking modes, or RTS/CTS hardware handshaking mode.



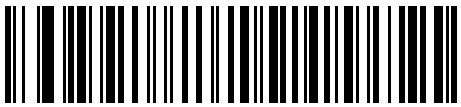
*** Minimum: 2 Sec**



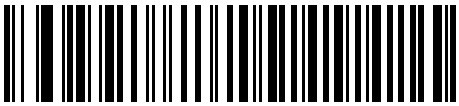
Low: 2.5 Sec



Medium: 5 Sec



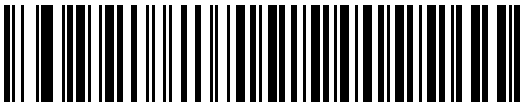
High: 7.5 Sec



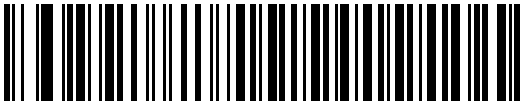
Maximum: 9.9 Sec

RTS Line State

This parameter sets the idle state of the Serial Host RTS line. Scan a bar code below to select **Low RTS** or **High RTS** line state.



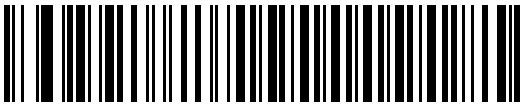
*** Host: Low RTS**



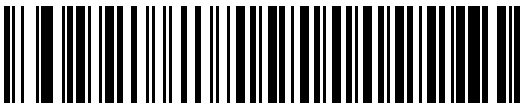
Host: High RTS

Beep on <BEL>

If you enable this parameter, the digital scanner issues a beep when it detects a <BEL> character on the RS-232 serial line. <BEL> indicates an illegal entry or other important event.



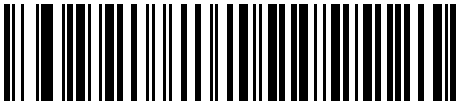
Beep On <BEL> Character (Enable)



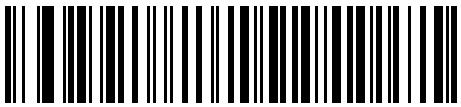
*** Do Not Beep On <BEL> Character (Disable)**

Intercharacter Delay

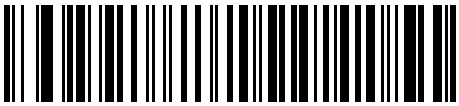
This parameter specifies the intercharacter delay inserted between character transmissions.



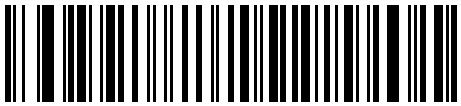
*** Minimum: 0 msec**



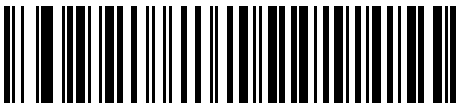
Low: 25 msec



Medium: 50 msec



High: 75 msec

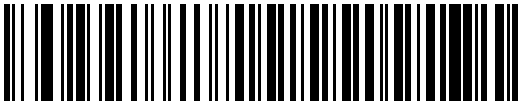


Maximum: 99 msec

Nixdorf Beep/LED Options

If you selected Nixdorf Mode B, this indicates when the digital scanner beeps and turns on its LED after a decode.

*** Normal Operation**
(Beep/LED immediately after decode)



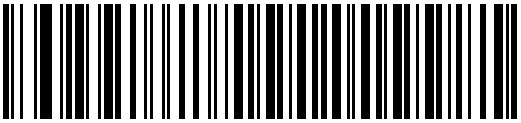
Beep/LED After Transmission

Beep/LED After CTS Pulse

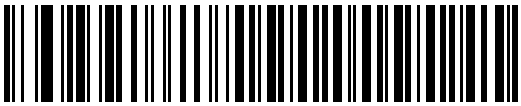
Ignore Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.



*** Send Bar Code**
(with unknown characters)



Do Not Send Bar Codes
(with unknown characters)

ASCII Character Set for RS-232

You can assign the values in *Table 8-4* as prefixes or suffixes for ASCII character data transmission.

Table 8-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1000	%U	NUL
1001	$A	SOH
1002	$B	STX
1003	$C	ETX
1004	$D	EOT
1005	$E	ENQ
1006	$F	ACK
1007	$G	BELL
1008	$H	BCKSPC
1009	$I	HORIZ TAB
1010	$J	LF/NW LN
1011	$K	VT
1012	$L	FF
1013	$M	CR/ENTER
1014	$N	SO
1015	$O	SI
1016	$P	DLE
1017	$Q	DC1/XON
1018	$R	DC2
1019	$S	DC3/XOFF
1020	$T	DC4
1021	$U	NAK
1022	$V	SYN
1023	$W	ETB
1024	$X	CAN
1025	$Y	EM
1026	$Z	SUB
1027	%A	ESC

Table 8-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1028	%B	FS
1029	%C	GS
1030	%D	RS
1031	%E	US
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	"
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:

Table 8-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y

Table 8-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	`
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x

Table 8-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~
1127		Undefined
7013		ENTER

CHAPTER 9 IBM 468X / 469X INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with an IBM 468X/469X host.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting to an IBM 468X/469X Host

Connect the digital scanner directly to the host interface.

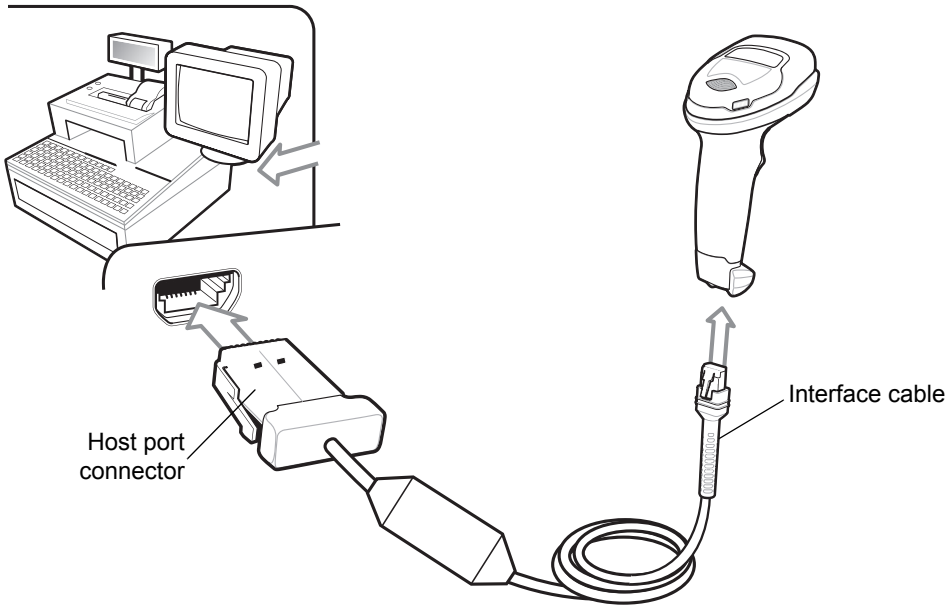


Figure 9-1 *IBM Direct Connection*

> ***NOTE*** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 9-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner. See *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*.
2. Connect the other end of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the appropriate port on the host (typically Port 9).
3. The digital scanner automatically detects the host interface type, but there is no default setting. Scan the port address by scanning the appropriate bar code from *Port Address on page 9-4*.
4. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

> ***NOTE*** The only required configuration is the port address. The IBM system typically controls other digital scanner parameters.

IBM Parameter Defaults

Table 9-1 lists the defaults for IBM host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the Parameter Descriptions section beginning on page *9-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 9-1 *IBM Host Default Table*

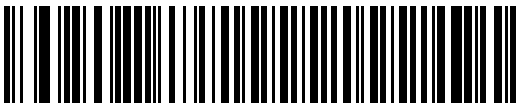
Parameter	Default	Page Number
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters		
Port Address	None Selected	*9-4*
Convert Unknown to Code 39	Disable	*9-5*
Ignore Beep Directive	Enable (Ignore)	*9-5*
Ignore Configuration Directive	Enable (Ignore)	*9-6*

IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters

Port Address

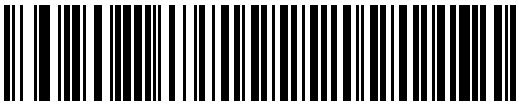
This parameter sets the IBM 468X/469X port used.

NOTE Scanning one of these bar codes enables the RS-485 interface on the digital scanner.



*** None Selected**

Hand-Held Scanner Emulation (Port 9B)



Non-IBM Scanner Emulation (Port 5B)

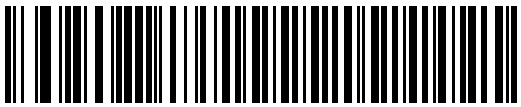
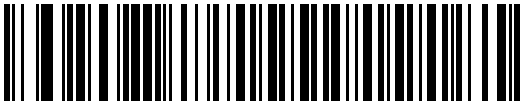


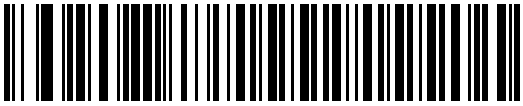
Table Top Scanner Emulation (Port 17)

Convert Unknown to Code 39

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable the conversion of unknown bar code type data to Code 39.



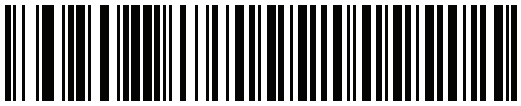
Enable Convert Unknown to Code 39



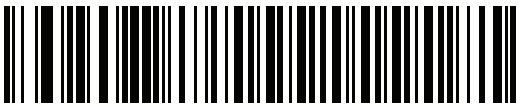
***Disable Convert Unknown to Code 39**

Ignore Beep Directive

Scan one of the following bar codes to honor or ignore a beep directive from the IBM RS-485 host. When enabled, the request is **not** sent to the digital scanner. All directives are still acknowledged to the host as if they were processed.



Disable Ignore Beep Directive

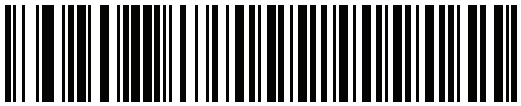


***Enable Ignore Beep Directive**

Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive

Scan one of the following bar codes to honor or ignore a code type enable/disable directive made over the IBM RS-485 bus. When this parameter is enabled, this request is **not** sent to the digital scanner. All directives are still acknowledged to the IBM RS-485 host as if they were processed.

Disable Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive



***Enable Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive**

CHAPTER 10 KEYBOARD WEDGE INTERFACE

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up a keyboard wedge interface with the digital scanner. With this interface, the digital scanner is connected between the keyboard and host computer, and translates bar code data into keystrokes. The host computer accepts the keystrokes as if they originated from the keyboard. This mode adds bar code reading functionality to a system designed for manual keyboard input. Keyboard keystrokes are simply passed through.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

Connecting a Keyboard Wedge Interface

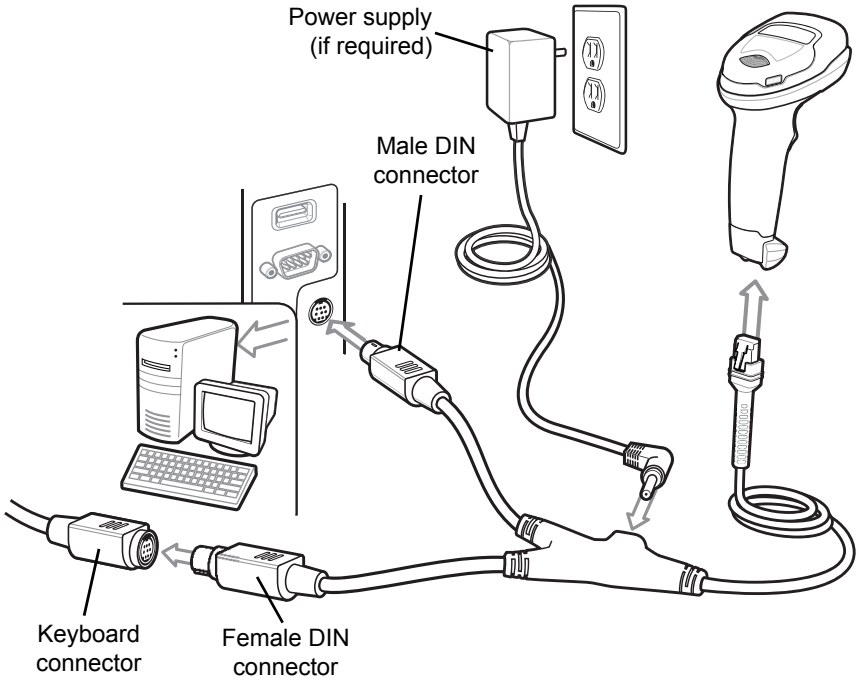


Figure 10-1 *Keyboard Wedge Connection with Y-cable*

To connect the keyboard wedge interface Y-cable:

NOTE Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 10-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Turn off the host and unplug the keyboard connector.
2. Attach the modular connector of the Y-cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner. See *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*.
3. Connect the round male DIN host connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard port on the host device.
4. Connect the round female DIN keyboard connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard connector.
5. If needed, attach the optional power supply to the connector in the middle of the Y-cable.
6. Ensure that all connections are secure.
7. Turn on the host system.
8. The digital scanner automatically detects the host interface type and uses the default setting. If the default (*) does not meet your requirements, scan *IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles on page 10-4*.
9. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

Keyboard Wedge Parameter Defaults

Table 10-1 lists the defaults for Keyboard Wedge host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) in *Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters on page 10-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix B, Country Codes* for Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes).

See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

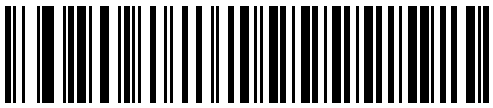
Table 10-1 *Keyboard Wedge Host Default Table*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters		
Keyboard Wedge Host Type	IBM AT Notebook	*10-4*
Ignore Unknown Characters	Transmit	*10-4*
Keystroke Delay	No Delay	*10-5*
Intra-Keystroke Delay	Disable	*10-5*
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation	Enable	*10-6*
Quick Keypad Emulation	Enable	*10-6*
Simulated Caps Lock	Disable	*10-7*
Caps Lock Override	Disable	*10-7*
Convert Wedge Case	No Convert	*10-8*
Function Key Mapping	Disable	*10-8*
FN1 Substitution	Disable	*10-9*
Send Make and Break	Send	*10-9*

Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters

Keyboard Wedge Host Types

Select the Keyboard Wedge host by scanning one of the bar codes below.



IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles

***IBM AT Notebook**

Ignore Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

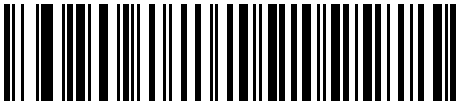
Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.

***Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Transmit)**

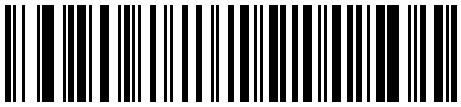
Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters

Keystroke Delay

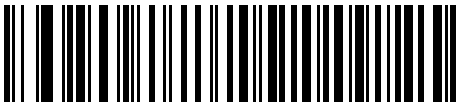
This is the delay in milliseconds between emulated keystrokes. Scan a bar code below to increase the delay when hosts require a slower transmission of data.



*** No Delay**



Medium Delay (20 msec)



Long Delay (40 msec)

Intra-Keystroke Delay

Enable this to insert an additional delay between each emulated key depression and release. This sets the Keystroke Delay parameter to a minimum of 5 msec as well.

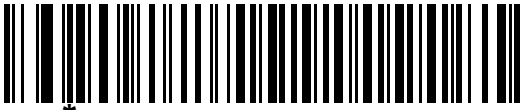
Enable

*** Disable**

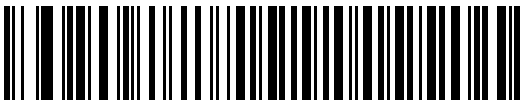
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation

This allows emulation of most other country keyboard types not listed in *Appendix B, Country Codes* in a Microsoft® operating system environment..

NOTE If your keyboard type is not listed in the country code list (see *Country Codes on page B-1*), disable *Quick Keypad Emulation on page 10-6* and ensure *Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation on page 10-6* is enabled.



***Enable Alternate Numeric Keypad**



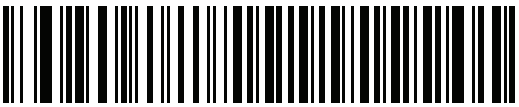
Disable Alternate Numeric Keypad

Quick Keypad Emulation

This parameter enables faster keypad emulation where character value sequences are only sent for characters not found on the keyboard.

NOTE This option applies only when *Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation* is enabled.

***Enable Quick Keypad Emulation**



Disable Quick Keypad Emulation

Simulated Caps Lock

Enable this to invert upper and lower case characters on the bar code as if the Caps Lock state is enabled on the keyboard. This inversion occurs regardless of the keyboard's **Caps Lock** state. Note that this only applies to alpha characters.

✓ ***NOTE*** Simulated Caps Lock applies to ASCII characters only.

Enable Caps Lock On

*** Disable Caps Lock On**

Caps Lock Override

Enable this on AT or AT Notebook hosts to preserve the case of the data regardless of the state of the **Caps Lock** key. Therefore, an 'A' in the bar code transmits as an 'A' regardless of the setting of the keyboard's **Caps Lock** key.

Enable Caps Lock Override

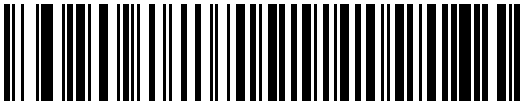
*** Disable Caps Lock Override**

✓ ***NOTE*** If both Simulated Caps Lock and Caps Lock Override are enabled, Caps Lock Override takes precedence.

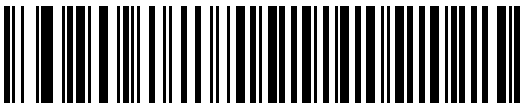
Convert Wedge Case

Enable this to convert all bar code data to the selected case.

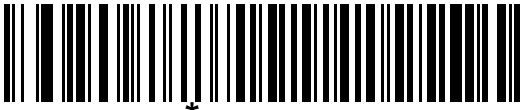
NOTE Convert Case applies to ASCII characters only.



Convert to Upper Case



Convert to Lower Case



*** No Convert**

Function Key Mapping

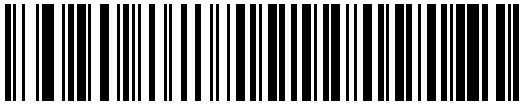
ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as control key sequences (see *Table 10-2 on page 10-11*). Enable this parameter to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold entry remain the same whether or not you enable this parameter.

Enable

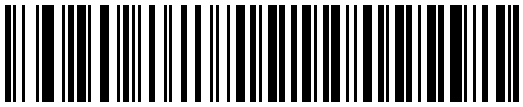
*** Disable**

FN1 Substitution

Enable this to replace FN1 characters in an EAN128 bar code with a user-selected keystroke (see *FN1 Substitution Values on page 4-39*).



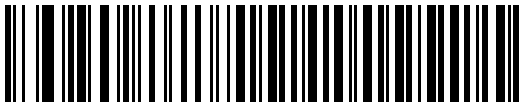
Enable



*** Disable**

Send Make and Break

Enable this to prevent sending the scan codes for releasing a key.



*** Send Make and Break Scan Codes**

Send Make Scan Code Only

NOTE Windows-based systems must use **Send Make and Break Scan Codes**.

Keyboard Maps

Refer to the following keyboard maps for prefix/suffix keystroke parameters. To program the prefix/suffix values, see the bar codes on *page 4-37*.

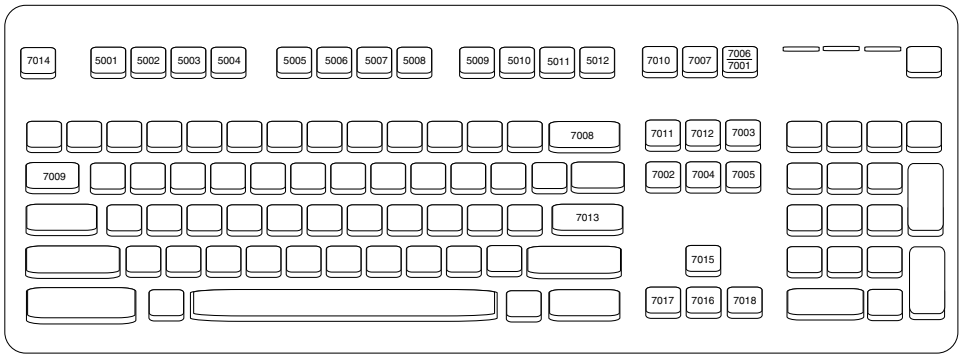


Figure 10-2 *IBM PS2 Type Keyboard*

ASCII Character Set for Keyboard Wedge

NOTE Code 39 Full ASCII interprets the bar code special character ($ + % /) preceding a Code 39 character and assigns an ASCII character value to the pair. For example, if you enable Code 39 Full ASCII and scan **+B**, it transmits as **b**, **%J** as **?**, and **%V** as **@**. Scanning **ABC%I** outputs the keystroke equivalent of **ABC >.**

Table 10-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 10-8*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 10-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [/**ESC**[1]
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 10-8*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 10-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 10-8*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 10-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	‘
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 10-8*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 10-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 10-8*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 10-3 *Keyboard Wedge ALT Key Character Set*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table 10-4 *Keyboard Wedge GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Keys	Keystrokes
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S

Table 10-4 *Keyboard Wedge GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Keys	Keystrokes
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z

Table 10-5 *Keyboard Wedge F Key Character Set*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F1
5002	F2
5003	F3
5004	F4
5005	F5
5006	F6
5007	F7
5008	F8
5009	F9
5010	F10
5011	F11
5012	F12
5013	F13
5014	F14
5015	F15
5016	F16
5017	F17
5018	F18
5019	F19
5020	F20
5021	F21

Table 10-5 *Keyboard Wedge F Key Character Set (Continued)*

F Keys	Keystroke
5022	F22
5023	F23
5024	F24

Table 10-6 *Keyboard Wedge Numeric Keypad Character Set*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table 10-7 *Keyboard Wedge Extended Keypad Character Set*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	Pg Up
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Dn Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

CHAPTER 11 SYMBOLOGIES

Introduction

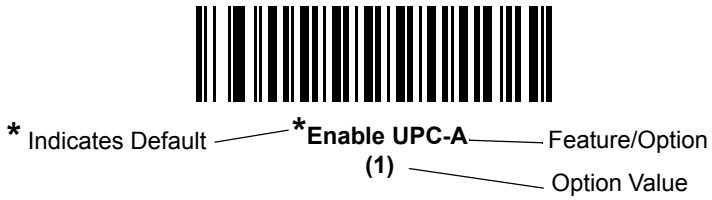
This chapter describes symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features. Before programming, follow the instructions in *Chapter 1, Getting Started*.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the digital scanner powers down.

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

Select a host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, see *Default Parameters on page 4-5*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to transmit bar code data without the UPC-A check digit, simply scan the **Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit** bar code under *Transmit UPC-A Check Digit on page 11-17*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5** require scanning several bar codes. See the individual parameter, such as **Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5**, for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

Symbology Parameter Defaults

Table 11-1 lists the defaults for all symbology parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, see *Default Parameters on page 4-5*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 11-1 *Symbology Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Enable/Disable All Code Types				*11-8*
1D Symbologies				
UPC/EAN				
UPC-A	1	01h	Enable	*11-9*
UPC-E	2	02h	Enable	*11-9*
UPC-E1	12	0Ch	Disable	*11-10*
EAN-8/JAN 8	4	04h	Enable	*11-10*
EAN-13/JAN 13	3	03h	Enable	*11-11*
Bookland EAN	83	53h	Disable	*11-11*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2 and 5 digits)	16	10h	Ignore	*11-13*
User-Programmable Supplementals Supplemental 1: Supplemental 2:	 579 580	 F1h 43h F1h 44h	000	*11-15*
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	80	50h	10	*11-15*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	672	F1h A0h	Combined	*11-16*
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone	1289	F8h 05h 09h	Disable	*11-17*
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	40	28h	Enable	*11-17*
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	41	29h	Enable	*11-17*
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	42	2Ah	Enable	*11-18*
UPC-A Preamble	34	22h	System Character	*11-19*

Table 11-1 *Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
UPC-E Preamble	35	23h	System Character	*11-19*
UPC-E1 Preamble	36	24h	System Character	*11-21*
Convert UPC-E to A	37	25h	Disable	*11-22*
Convert UPC-E1 to A	38	26h	Disable	*11-22*
EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend	39	27h	Disable	*11-23*
Bookland ISBN Format	576	F1h 40h	ISBN-10	*11-23*
UCC Coupon Extended Code	85	55h	Disable	*11-24*
Coupon Report	730	F1h DAh	New Coupon Format	*11-24*
ISSN EAN	617	F1h 69h	Disable	*11-25*
Code 128				
Code 128	8	08h	Enable	*11-26*
Set Length(s) for Code 128	209, 210	D1h, D2h	1 to 55	*11-26*
GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)	14	0Eh	Enable	*11-28*
ISBT 128	84	54h	Enable	*11-28*
ISBT Concatenation	577	F1h 41h	Autodiscriminate	*11-29*
Check ISBT Table	578	F1h 42h	Enable	*11-30*
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	223	DFh	10	*11-30*
Code 128 Security Level	751	F1h EFh	Security Level 1	*11-31*
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone	1208	F8h 04h B8h	Disable	*11-32*
Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>	1254	F8h 04h E6h	Disable	*11-32*
Code 39				
Code 39	0	00h	Enable	*11-33*
Trioptic Code 39	13	0Dh	Disable	*11-33*
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	86	56h	Disable	*11-34*
Code 32 Prefix	231	E7h	Disable	*11-34*
Set Length(s) for Code 39	18, 19	12h, 13h	1 to 55	*11-35*
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	48	30h	Disable	*11-36*
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	43	2Bh	Disable	*11-36*
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	17	11h	Disable	*11-37*

Table 11-1 *Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Code 39 Security Level	750	F1h EEh	Security Level 1	*11-38*
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone	1209	F8h 04h B9h	Disable	*11-39*
Code 93				
Code 93	9	09h	Enable	*11-40*
Set Length(s) for Code 93	26, 27	1Ah, 1Bh	1 to 55	*11-40*
Code 11				
Code 11	10	0Ah	Disable	*11-42*
Set Lengths for Code 11	28, 29	1Ch, 1Dh	4 to 55	*11-42*
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	52	34h	Disable	*11-44*
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	47	2Fh	Disable	*11-45*
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)				
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	6	06h	Enable	*11-46*
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	22, 23	16h, 17h	6 to 55	*11-46*
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	49	31h	Disable	*11-48*
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	44	2Ch	Disable	*11-49*
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	82	52h	Disable	*11-49*
I 2 of 5 Security Level	1121	F8h 04h 61h	Security Level 1	*11-50*
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone	1210	F8h 04h BAh	Disable	*11-51*
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)				
Discrete 2 of 5	5	05h	Disable	*11-52*
Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5	20, 21	14h 15h	1 to 55	*11-52*
Codabar (NW - 7)				
Codabar	7	07h	Enable	*11-54*
Set Lengths for Codabar	24, 25	18h, 19h	4 to 55	*11-54*
CLSI Editing	54	36h	Disable	*11-56*
NOTIS Editing	55	37h	Disable	*11-56*
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/ Stop Characters Detection	855	F2h 57h	Upper Case	
MSI				
MSI	11	0Bh	Disable	*11-58*
Set Length(s) for MSI	30, 31	1Eh, 1Fh	4 to 55	*11-58*

Table 11-1 *Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
MSI Check Digits	50	32h	One	*11-60*
Transmit MSI Check Digit	46	2Eh	Disable	*11-60*
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	51	33h	Mod 10/Mod 10	*11-61*
Chinese 2 of 5				
Chinese 2 of 5	408	F0h 98h	Disable	*11-62*
Matrix 2 of 5				
Matrix 2 of 5	618	F1h 6Ah	Disable	*11-63*
Matrix 2 of 5 Lengths	619 620	F1h 6Bh F1h 6Ch	4 to 55	*11-63*
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	622	F1h 6Eh	Disable	*11-65*
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	623	F1h 6Fh	Disable	*11-65*
Korean 3 of 5				
Korean 3 of 5	581	F1h 45h	Disable	*11-66*
Inverse 1D	586	F1h 4Ah	Regular	*11-66*
GS1 DataBar				
GS1 DataBar-14	338	F0h 52h	Enable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Limited	339	F0h 53h	Enable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Expanded	340	F0h 54h	Enable	*11-69*
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN	397	F0h 8Dh	Disable	*11-69*
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level	728	F1h D8h	Level 3	*11-70*
Composite				
Composite CC-C	341	F0h 55h	Disable	*11-71*
Composite CC-A/B	342	F0h 56h	Disable	*11-71*
Composite TLC-39	371	F0h 73h	Disable	*11-72*
UPC Composite Mode	344	F0h 58h	UPC Never Linked	*11-72*
Composite Beep Mode	398	F0h 8Eh	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	*11-73*
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	427	F0h ABh	Disable	*11-73*
Postal Codes				
US Postnet	89	59h	Disable	*11-74*
US Planet	90	5Ah	Disable	*11-74*

Table 11-1 *Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	95	5Fh	Enable	11-75
UK Postal	91	5Bh	Disable	11-75
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	96	60h	Enable	11-76
Japan Postal	290	F0h 22h	Disable	11-76
Australia Post	291	F0h 23h	Disable	11-77
Australia Post Format	718	F1h CEh	Autodiscriminate	11-78
Netherlands KIX Code	326	F0h 46h	Disable	11-79
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	592	F1h 50h	Disable	11-79
UPU FICS Postal	611	F1h 63h	Disable	11-80
2D Symbologies				
PDF417	15	0Fh	Enable	11-81
MicroPDF417	227	E3h	Disable	11-81
Code 128 Emulation	123	7Bh	Disable	11-82
Data Matrix	292	F0h 24h	Enable	11-83
Data Matrix Inverse	588	F1h 4Ch	Inverse Autodetect	11-83
Maxicode	294	F0h 26h	Disable	11-84
QR Code	293	F0h 25h	Enable	11-84
QR Inverse	587	F1h 4Bh	Regular	11-85
MicroQR	573	F1h 3Dh	Enable	11-85
Aztec	574	F1h 3Eh	Enable	11-86
Aztec Inverse	589	F1h 4Dh	Inverse Autodetect	11-86
Han Xin	1167	F8h 04h 8Fh	Disable	11-87
Han Xin Inverse	1168	F8h 04h 90h	Regular	11-87
Symbology-Specific Security Levels				
Redundancy Level	78	4Eh	1	11-88
Security Level	77	4Dh	1	11-90
1D Quiet Zone Level	1288	F8h 05h 08h	1	11-91
Intercharacter Gap Size	381	F0h 7Dh	Normal	11-92
Report Version				11-92

Table 11-1 *Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Macro PDF				
Flush Macro PDF Buffer	N/A	N/A	N/A	*11-93*
Abort Macro PDF Entry	N/A	N/A	N/A	*11-93*

Enable/Disable All Code Types

To disable all symbologies, scan **Disable All Code Types** below. This is useful when enabling only a few code types.

Scan **Enable All Code Types** turn on (enable) all code types. This is useful when you want to read all codes, or when you want to disable only a few code types.

Disable All Code Types

Enable All Code Types

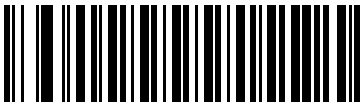
UPC/EAN

Enable/Disable UPC-A

Parameter # 1 (SSI # 01h)

To enable or disable UPC-A, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable UPC-A**
(1)

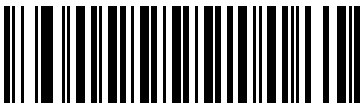


Disable UPC-A
(0)

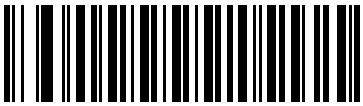
Enable/Disable UPC-E

Parameter # 2 (SSI # 02h)

To enable or disable UPC-E, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable UPC-E**
(1)



Disable UPC-E
(0)

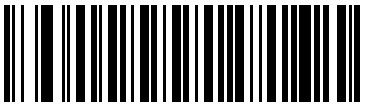
Enable/Disable UPC-E1

Parameter # 12 (SSI # 0Ch)

UPC-E1 is disabled by default.

To enable or disable UPC-E1, scan the appropriate bar code below.

NOTE UPC-E1 is not a UCC (Uniform Code Council) approved symbology.



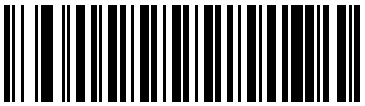
Enable UPC-E1
(1)

***Disable UPC-E1**
(0)

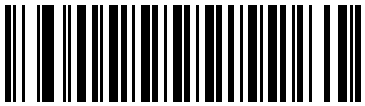
Enable/Disable EAN-8/JAN-8

Parameter # 4 (SSI # 04h)

To enable or disable EAN-8/JAN-8, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable EAN-8/JAN-8**
(1)

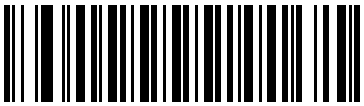


Disable EAN-8/JAN-8
(0)

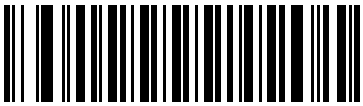
Enable/Disable EAN-13/JAN-13

Parameter # 3 (SSI # 03h)

To enable or disable EAN-13/JAN-13, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable EAN-13/JAN-13**
(1)



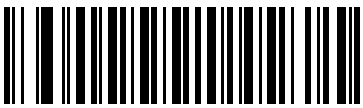
Disable EAN-13/JAN-13
(0)

Enable/Disable Bookland EAN

Parameter # 83 (SSI # 53h)

To enable or disable Bookland EAN, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Bookland EAN
(1)



***Disable Bookland EAN**
(0)

NOTE If you enable Bookland EAN, select a *Bookland ISBN Format on page 11-23*. Also select either Decode UPC/EAN Supplementals, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode in *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 11-12*.

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals

Parameter # 16 (SSI # 10h)

Supplementals are bar codes appended according to specific format conventions (e.g., UPC A+2, UPC E+2, EAN 13+2). The following options are available:

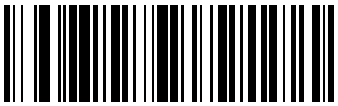
- If you select **Ignore UPC/EAN with Supplementals**, and the digital scanner is presented with a UPC/EAN plus supplemental symbol, the digital scanner decodes UPC/EAN and ignores the supplemental characters.
- If you select **Decode UPC/EAN with Supplementals**, the digital scanner only decodes UPC/EAN symbols with supplemental characters, and ignores symbols without supplementals.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals**, the digital scanner decodes UPC/EAN symbols with supplemental characters immediately. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the digital scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 11-15* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no supplemental.
- If you select one of the following **Supplemental Mode** options, the digital scanner immediately transmits EAN-13 bar codes starting with that prefix that have supplemental characters. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the digital scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 11-15* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no supplemental. The digital scanner transmits UPC/EAN bar codes that do not have that prefix immediately.
  - **Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode**

  NOTE If you select 978/979 Supplemental Mode and are scanning Bookland EAN bar codes, see *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 11-11* to enable Bookland EAN, and select a format using *Bookland ISBN Format on page 11-23*.

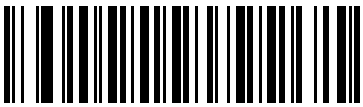
  - **Enable 977 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 491 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable Smart Supplemental Mode** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously.
  - **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with a 3-digit user-defined prefix. Set this 3-digit prefix using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-15*.
  - **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2 -** applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with either of two 3-digit user-defined prefixes. Set the 3-digit prefixes using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-15*.
  - **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or the user-defined prefix set using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-15*.
  - **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2 -** applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or one of the two user-defined prefixes set using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-15*.

NOTE To minimize the risk of invalid data transmission, select either to decode or ignore supplemental characters.

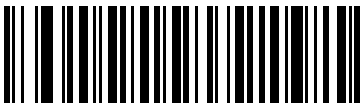
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)



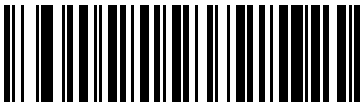
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Only With Supplementals (1)



***Ignore Supplementals (0)**



Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2)



Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode (4)

Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode (5)

Enable 977 Supplemental Mode (7)

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)

Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode (6)

Enable 491 Supplemental Mode (8)

Enable Smart Supplemental Mode (3)

Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 (9)

Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2 (10)

Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 (11)

Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2 (12)

User-Programmable Supplementals

Supplemental 1: Parameter # 579 (SSI # F1h 43h)

Supplemental 2: Parameter # 580 (SSI # F1h 44h)

If you selected a Supplemental User-Programmable option from *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 11-12*, select **User-Programmable Supplemental 1** to set the 3-digit prefix. Then select the 3 digits using the numeric bar codes beginning on *page G-1*. Select **User-Programmable Supplemental 2** to set a second 3-digit prefix. Then select the 3 digits using the numeric bar codes beginning on *page G-1*. The default is 000 (zeroes).

User-Programmable Supplemental 1

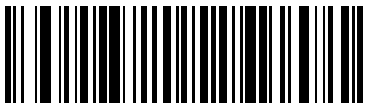
User-Programmable Supplemental 2

UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

Parameter # 80 (SSI # 50h)

If you selected **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals**, this option adjusts the number of times to decode a symbol without supplementals before transmission. The range is from two to thirty times. Five or above is recommended when decoding a mix of UPC/EAN/JAN symbols with and without supplementals. The default is 10.

Scan the bar code below to set a decode redundancy value. Next, scan two numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.



UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID Format

Parameter # 672 (SSI # F1h A0h)

Select an output format when reporting UPC/EAN/JAN bar codes with Supplementals with *Transmit Code ID Character on page 4-36* set to **AIM Code ID Character**:

- **Separate** - transmit UPC/EAN with supplementals with separate AIM IDs but one transmission, i.e.:

  ]E<0 or 4><data>]E<1 or 2>[supplemental data]

- **Combined** – transmit UPC/EAN with supplementals with one AIM ID and one transmission, i.e.:

  ]E3<data+supplemental data>

- **Separate Transmissions** - transmit UPC/EAN with supplementals with separate AIM IDs and separate transmissions, i.e.:

  ]E<0 or 4><data>
  ]E<1 or 2>[supplemental data]

Separate
(0)

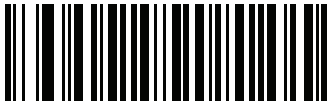
***Combined**
(1)

Separate Transmissions
(2)

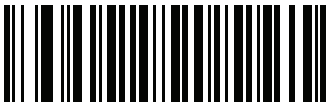
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1289 (SSI # F8h 05h 09h)

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding UPC bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 11-91*.



Enable UPC Reduced Quiet Zone
(1)



***Disable UPC Reduced Quiet Zone**
(0)

Transmit UPC-A Check Digit

Parameter # 40 (SSI # 28h)

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-A check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

***Transmit UPC-A Check Digit**
(1)

Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit
(0)

Transmit UPC-E Check Digit

Parameter # 41 (SSI # 29h)

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

***Transmit UPC-E Check Digit**
(1)

Do Not Transmit UPC-E Check Digit
(0)

Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit

Parameter # 42 (SSI # 2Ah)

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E1 check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

***Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit**
(1)

Do Not Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit
(0)

UPC-A Preamble

Parameter # 34 (SSI # 22h)

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-A preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.

No Preamble (<DATA>)
(0)

***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(1)

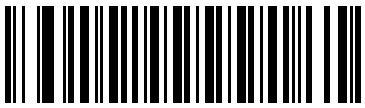
System Character & Country Code (< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(2)

UPC-E Preamble

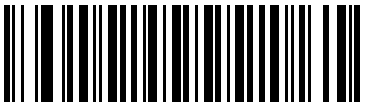
Parameter # 35 (SSI # 23h)

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-E preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.

No Preamble (<DATA>)
(0)



***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(1)



System Character & Country Code (< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(2)

UPC-E1 Preamble

Parameter # 36 (SSI # 24h)

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-E1 preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.

No Preamble (<DATA>)
(0)

***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(1)

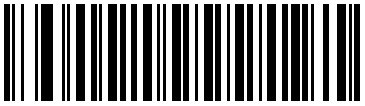
System Character & Country Code
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(2)

Convert UPC-E to UPC-A

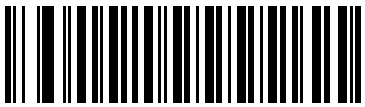
Parameter # 37 (SSI # 25h)

Enable this to convert UPC-E (zero suppressed) decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Disable this to transmit UPC-E decoded data as UPC-E data, without conversion.



Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Enable)
(1)



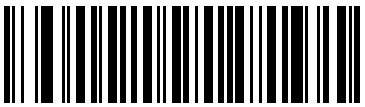
***Do Not Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Disable)**
(0)

Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A

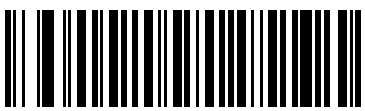
Parameter # 38 (SSI # 26h)

Enable this to convert UPC-E1 decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Disable this to transmit UPC-E1 decoded data as UPC-E1 data, without conversion.



Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Enable)
(1)



***Do Not Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Disable)**
(0)

EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend

Parameter # 39 (SSI # 27h)

Enable this parameter to add five leading zeros to decoded EAN-8 symbols to make them compatible in format to EAN-13 symbols. Disable this to transmit EAN-8 symbols as is.

Enable EAN/JAN Zero Extend
(1)

***Disable EAN/JAN Zero Extend**
(0)

Bookland ISBN Format

Parameter # 576 (SSI # F1h 40h)

If you enabled Bookland EAN using *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 11-11*, select one of the following formats for Bookland data:

- **Bookland ISBN-10** - The digital scanner reports Bookland data starting with 978 in traditional 10-digit format with the special Bookland check digit for backward-compatibility. Data starting with 979 is not considered Bookland in this mode.
- **Bookland ISBN-13** - The digital scanner reports Bookland data (starting with either 978 or 979) as EAN-13 in 13-digit format to meet the 2007 ISBN-13 protocol.

***Bookland ISBN-10**
(0)

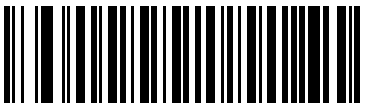
Bookland ISBN-13
(1)

✓ ***NOTE*** For Bookland EAN to function properly, first enable Bookland EAN using *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 11-11*, then select either Decode UPC/EAN Supplementals, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode in *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 11-12*.

UCC Coupon Extended Code

Parameter # 85 (SSI # 55h)

Enable this parameter to decode UPC-A bar codes starting with digit '5', EAN-13 bar codes starting with digit '99', and UPC-A/GS1-128 Coupon Codes. UPCA, EAN-13, and GS1-128 must be enabled to scan all types of Coupon Codes.



Enable UCC Coupon Extended Code (1)

***Disable UCC Coupon Extended Code (0)**

NOTE See *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 11-15* to control autodiscrimination of the GS1-128 (right half) of a coupon code.

Coupon Report

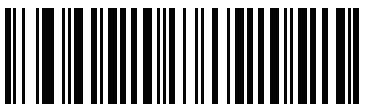
Parameter # 730 (SSI # F1h DAh)

Select an option to determine which type of coupon format to support.

- Select **Old Coupon Format** to support UPC-A/GS1-128 and EAN-13/GS1-128.
- Select **New Coupon Format** as an interim format to support UPC-A/GS1-DataBar and EAN-13/GS1-DataBar.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate Format**, the digital scanner supports both **Old Coupon Format** and **New Coupon Format.**

Old Coupon Format (0)

***New Coupon Format (1)**



Autodiscriminate Coupon Format (2)

ISSN EAN

Parameter # 617 (SSI # F1h 69h)

To enable or disable ISSN EAN, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable ISSN EAN
(1)

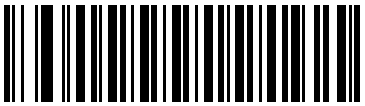
***Disable ISSN EAN**
(0)

Code 128

Enable/Disable Code 128

Parameter # 8 (SSI # 08h)

To enable or disable Code 128, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable Code 128**
(1)

Disable Code 128
(0)

Set Lengths for Code 128

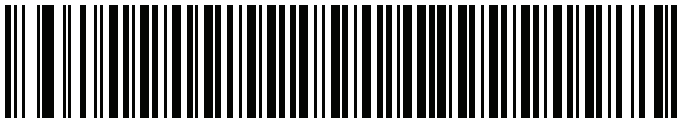
Parameter # L1 = 209 (SSI # D1h), L2 = 210 (SSI # D2h)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 128 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default is 1 to 55.

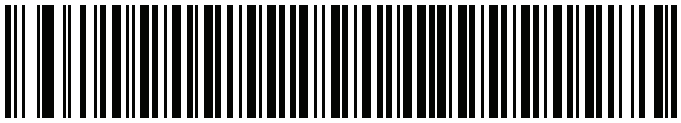
NOTE When setting lengths for different bar code types, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 128 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 128 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 128 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 128 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 128 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 128 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Select this option to decode Code 128 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

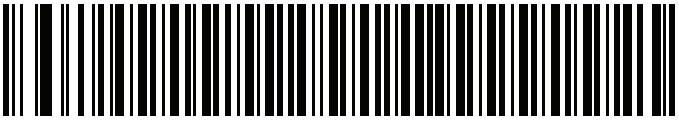
Set Lengths for Code 128 (continued)



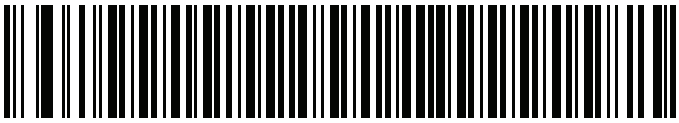
Code 128 - One Discrete Length



Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths



Code 128 - Length Within Range

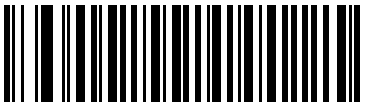


Code 128 - Any Length

Enable/Disable GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)

Parameter # 14 (SSI # 0Eh)

To enable or disable GS1-128, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable GS1-128**
(1)

Disable GS1-128
(0)

Enable/Disable ISBT 128

Parameter # 84 (SSI # 54h)

ISBT 128 is a variant of Code 128 used in the blood bank industry. Scan a bar code below to enable or disable ISBT 128. If necessary, the host must perform concatenation of the ISBT data.

***Enable ISBT 128**
(1)

Disable ISBT 128
(0)

ISBT Concatenation

Parameter # 577 (SSI # F1h 41h)

Select an option for concatenating pairs of ISBT code types:

- If you select **Disable ISBT Concatenation**, the digital scanner does not concatenate pairs of ISBT codes it encounters.
- If you select **Enable ISBT Concatenation**, there must be two ISBT codes in order for the digital scanner to decode and perform concatenation. The digital scanner does not decode single ISBT symbols.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation**, the digital scanner decodes and concatenates pairs of ISBT codes immediately. If only a single ISBT symbol is present, the digital scanner must decode the symbol the number of times set via *ISBT Concatenation Redundancy on page 11-30* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no additional ISBT symbol.

Disable ISBT Concatenation
(0)

Enable ISBT Concatenation
(1)

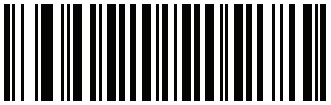
***Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation**
(2)

Check ISBT Table

Parameter # 578 (SSI # F1h 42h)

The ISBT specification includes a table that lists several types of ISBT bar codes that are commonly used in pairs. If you set **ISBT Concatenation** to **Enable**, enable **Check ISBT Table** to concatenate only those pairs found in this table. Other types of ISBT codes are not concatenated.

***Enable Check ISBT Table**
(1)



Disable Check ISBT Table
(0)

ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

Parameter # 223 (SSI # DFh)

If you set **ISBT Concatenation** to **Autodiscriminate,** use this parameter to set the number of times the digital scanner must decode an ISBT symbol before determining that there is no additional symbol.

Scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* to set a value between 2 and 20. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*. The default is 10.

ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

Code 128 Security Level

Parameter # 751 (SSI # F1h EFh)

Code 128 bar codes are vulnerable to misdecodes, particularly when Code 128 Lengths is set to **Any Length**. The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for Code 128 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **Code 128 Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **Code 128 Security Level 1:** A bar code must be successfully read twice, and satisfy certain safety requirements before being decoded. This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Code 128 Security Level 2:** Select this option with greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Code 128Security Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level to apply the highest safety requirements. A bar code must be successfully read three times before being decoded.

> ***NOTE*** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

Code 128Security Level 0
(0)

***Code 128 Security Level 1**
(1)

Code 128 Security Level 2
(2)

Code 128 Security Level 3
(3)

Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1208 (SSI # F8h 04h B8h)

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding Code 128 bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 11-91*.

Enable Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone
(1)

***Disable Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone**
(0)

Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>

Parameter # 1254 (SSI # F8h 04h E6h)

This feature applies to Code 128 bar codes with an embedded <FNC4> character. Enable this to strip the <FNC4> character from the decode data. The remaining characters do not change. When disabled, the <FNC4> character is not transmitted but the following character has 128 added to it.

Enable Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>
(1)

***Disable Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>**
(0)

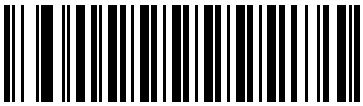
Code 39

Enable/Disable Code 39

Parameter # 0 (SSI # 00h)

To enable or disable Code 39, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Code 39**
(1)

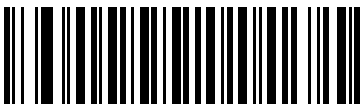


Disable Code 39
(0)

Enable/Disable Trioptic Code 39

Parameter # 13 (SSI # 0Dh)

Trioptic Code 39 is a variant of Code 39 used in the marking of computer tape cartridges. Trioptic Code 39 symbols always contain six characters. To enable or disable Trioptic Code 39, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Trioptic Code 39
(1)

***Disable Trioptic Code 39**
(0)

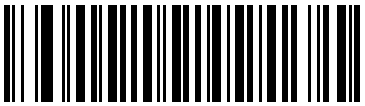
NOTE You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

Convert Code 39 to Code 32

Parameter # 86 (SSI # 56h)

Code 32 is a variant of Code 39 used by the Italian pharmaceutical industry. Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable converting Code 39 to Code 32.

NOTE Code 39 must be enabled for this parameter to function.



Enable Convert Code 39 to Code 32
(1)

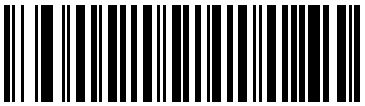
***Disable Convert Code 39 to Code 32**
(0)

Code 32 Prefix

Parameter # 231 (SSI # E7h)

Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable adding the prefix character “A” to all Code 32 bar codes.

NOTE Convert Code 39 to Code 32 must be enabled for this parameter to function.



Enable Code 32 Prefix
(1)

***Disable Code 32 Prefix**
(0)

Set Lengths for Code 39

Parameter # L1 = 18 (SSI # 12h), L2 = 19 (SSI # 13h)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 39 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. If Code 39 Full ASCII is enabled, **Length Within a Range** or **Any Length** are the preferred options. The default is 1 to 55.

NOTE When setting lengths for different bar code types, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 39 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 39 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 39 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 39 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 39 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 39 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Select this option to decode Code 39 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Code 39 - One Discrete Length

Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths

Code 39 - Length Within Range

Code 39 - Any Length

Code 39 Check Digit Verification

Parameter # 48 (SSI # 30h)

Enable this feature to check the integrity of all Code 39 symbols to verify that the data complies with specified check digit algorithm. Only Code 39 symbols which include a modulo 43 check digit are decoded. Enable this feature if the Code 39 symbols contain a Modulo 43 check digit.

Enable Code 39 Check Digit
(1)

***Disable Code 39 Check Digit**
(0)

Transmit Code 39 Check Digit

Parameter # 43 (SSI # 2Bh)

Scan a bar code below to transmit Code 39 data with or without the check digit.

Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Enable)
(1)

***Do Not Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Disable)**
(0)

NOTE Code 39 Check Digit Verification must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion

Parameter # 17 (SSI # 11h)

Code 39 Full ASCII is a variant of Code 39 which pairs characters to encode the full ASCII character set. To enable or disable Code 39 Full ASCII, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Code 39 Full ASCII
(1)

***Disable Code 39 Full ASCII**
(0)

NOTE You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

Code 39 Full ASCII to Full ASCII Correlation is host-dependent, and is therefore described in the ASCII Character Set Table for the appropriate interface. See the *ASCII Character Set for USB on page 6-18*.

Code 39 Security Level

Parameter # 750 (SSI # F1h EEh)

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for Code 39 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **Code 39 Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **Code 39 Security Level 1:** This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Code 39 Security Level 2:** Select this option with greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Code 39 Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level to apply the highest safety requirements.

> ✓ ***NOTE*** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

Code 39 Security Level 0
(0)

***Code 39 Security Level 1**
(1)

Code 39 Security Level 2
(2)

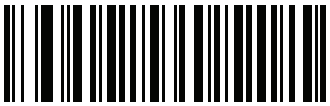
Code 39 Security Level 3
(3)

Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1209 (SSI # F8h 04h B9h)

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding Code 39 bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 11-91*.

Enable Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone (1)



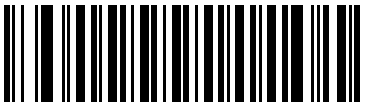
***Disable Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone (0)**

Code 93

Enable/Disable Code 93

Parameter # 9 (SSI # 09h)

To enable or disable Code 93, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable Code 93**
(1)

Disable Code 93
(0)

Set Lengths for Code 93

Parameter # L1 = 26 (SSI # 1Ah), L2 = 27 (SSI # 1Bh)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 93 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default is 1 to 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 93 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 93 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 93 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 93 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 93 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 93 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Code 93 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Code 93 (continued)

Code 93 - One Discrete Length

Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths

Code 93 - Length Within Range

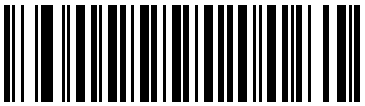
Code 93 - Any Length

Code 11

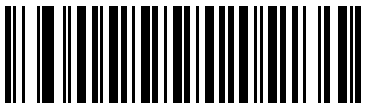
Code 11

Parameter # 10 (SSI # 0Ah)

To enable or disable Code 11, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Code 11
(1)



***Disable Code 11**
(0)

Set Lengths for Code 11

Parameter # L1 = 28 (SSI # 1Ch), L2 = 29 (SSI # 1Dh)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 11 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default is 4 to 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 11 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 11 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 11 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 11 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 11 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 11 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Code 11 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Code 11 (continued)

Code 11 - One Discrete Length

Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths

Code 11 - Length Within Range

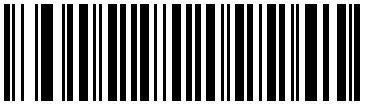
Code 11 - Any Length

Code 11 Check Digit Verification

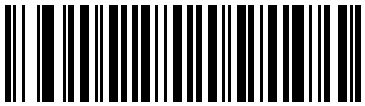
Parameter # 52 (SSI # 34h)

This feature allows the digital scanner to check the integrity of all Code 11 symbols to verify that the data complies with the specified check digit algorithm. This selects the check digit mechanism for the decoded Code 11 bar code. The options are to check for one check digit, check for two check digits, or disable the feature.

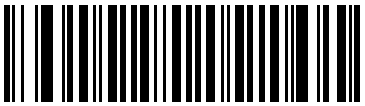
To enable this feature, scan the bar code below corresponding to the number of check digits encoded in the Code 11 symbols.



***Disable**
(0)



One Check Digit
(1)



Two Check Digits
(2)

Transmit Code 11 Check Digits

Parameter # 47 (SSI # 2Fh)

This feature selects whether or not to transmit the Code 11 check digit(s).

Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Enable)
(1)

***Do Not Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Disable)**
(0)

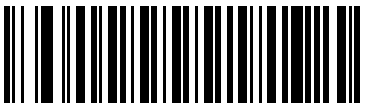
NOTE Code 11 Check Digit Verification must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)

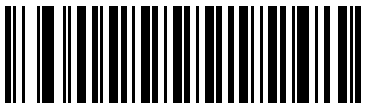
Enable/Disable Interleaved 2 of 5

Parameter # 6 (SSI # 06h)

To enable or disable Interleaved 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below, and select an Interleaved 2 of 5 length from the following pages.



***Enable Interleaved 2 of 5**
(1)



Disable Interleaved 2 of 5
(0)

Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = 22 (SSI # 16h), L2 = 23 (SSI # 17h)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for I 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The range for Interleaved 2 of 5 lengths is 0 - 55. The default is 6 to 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode an I 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

✓ ***NOTE*** Due to the construction of the I 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths) for I 2 of 5 applications.

Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5 (continued)

I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length

I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range

I 2 of 5 - Any Length

I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification

Parameter # 49 (SSI # 31h)

Enable this feature to check the integrity of all I 2 of 5 symbols to verify the data complies with either the specified Uniform Symbology Specification (USS), or the Optical Product Code Council (OPCC) check digit algorithm.

***Disable**
(0)

USS Check Digit
(1)

OPCC Check Digit
(2)

Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # 44 (SSI # 2Ch)

Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit I 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.

Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Enable)
(1)

***Do Not Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Disable)**
(0)

Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13

Parameter # 82 (SSI # 52h)

Enable this parameter to convert 14-character I 2 of 5 codes to EAN-13, and transmit to the host as EAN-13. To accomplish this, the I 2 of 5 code must be enabled, and the code must have a leading zero and a valid EAN-13 check digit.

Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Enable)
(1)

***Do Not Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Disable)**
(0)

I 2 of 5 Security Level

Parameter # 1121 (SSI # F8h 04h 61h)

Interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes are vulnerable to misdecodes, particularly when I 2 of 5 Lengths is set to **Any Length**. The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for Interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 1:** A bar code must be successfully read twice, and satisfy certain safety requirements before being decoded. This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 2:** Select this option with greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level. The highest safety requirements are applied. A bar code must be successfully read three times before being decoded.

NOTE Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

I 2 of 5 Security Level 0 (00h)

***I 2 of 5 Security Level 1 (01h)**

I 2 of 5 Security Level 2 (02h)

I 2 of 5 Security Level 3 (03h)

I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone

Parameter # 1210 (SSI # F8h 04h BAh)

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding I 2 of 5 bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level on page 11-91*.

Enable I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone (1)

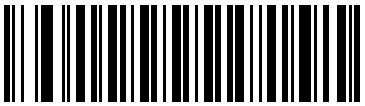
***Disable I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone (0)**

Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)

Enable/Disable Discrete 2 of 5

Parameter # 5 (SSI # 05h)

To enable or disable Discrete 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Discrete 2 of 5
(1)

***Disable Discrete 2 of 5**
(0)

Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = 20 (SSI # 14h), L2 = 21 (SSI # 15h)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for D 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The range for Discrete 2 of 5 lengths is 1 - 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a D 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

NOTE Due to the construction of the D 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (**D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths**) for D 2 of 5 applications.

Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5 (continued)

D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length

D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range

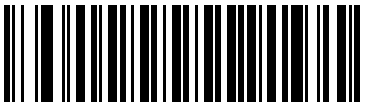
D 2 of 5 - Any Length

Codabar (NW - 7)

Enable/Disable Codabar

Parameter # 7 (SSI # 07h)

To enable or disable Codabar, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable Codabar**
(1)

Disable Codabar
(0)

Set Lengths for Codabar

Parameter # L1 = 24 (SSI # 18h), L2 = 25 (SSI # 19h)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Codabar to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default is 4 to 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Codabar symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Codabar symbols with 14 characters, scan **Codabar - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Codabar symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Codabar symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Codabar symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Codabar symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Codabar - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Codabar symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Codabar (continued)

Codabar - One Discrete Length

Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths

Codabar - Length Within Range

Codabar - Any Length

CLSI Editing

Parameter # 54 (SSI # 36h)

Enable this parameter to strip the start and stop characters and insert a space after the first, fifth, and tenth characters of a 14-character Codabar symbol. Enable this feature if the host system requires this data format.

NOTE Symbol length does not include start and stop characters.

Enable CLSI Editing
(1)

***Disable CLSI Editing**
(0)

NOTIS Editing

Parameter # 55 (SSI # 37h)

Enable this parameter to strip the start and stop characters from a decoded Codabar symbol. Enable this feature if the host system requires this data format.

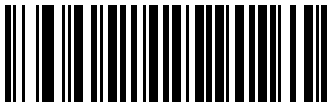
Enable NOTIS Editing
(1)

***Disable NOTIS Editing**
(0)

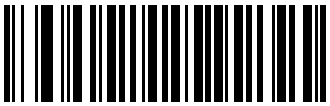
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection

Parameter # 855 (SSI # F2h 57h)

Select whether to detect upper case or lower case Codabar start/stop characters.



Lower Case
(1)



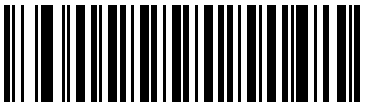
***Upper Case**
(0)

MSI

Enable/Disable MSI

Parameter # 11 (SSI # 0Bh)

To enable or disable MSI, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable MSI
(1)

***Disable MSI**
(0)

Set Lengths for MSI

Parameter # L1 = 30 (SSI # 1Eh), L2 = 31 (SSI # 1Fh)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for MSI to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default is 4 to 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only MSI symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only MSI symbols with 14 characters, scan **MSI - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only MSI symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only MSI symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **MSI - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a MSI symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode MSI symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **MSI - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode MSI symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for MSI (continued)

NOTE Due to the construction of the MSI symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (**MSI - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths**) for MSI applications.

MSI - One Discrete Length

MSI - Two Discrete Lengths

MSI - Length Within Range

MSI - Any Length

MSI Check Digits

Parameter # 50 (SSI # 32h)

With MSI symbols, one check digit is mandatory and always verified by the reader. The second check digit is optional. If the MSI codes include two check digits, scan the **Two MSI Check Digits** bar code to enable verification of the second check digit.

See *MSI Check Digit Algorithm on page 11-61* for the selection of second digit algorithms.

***One MSI Check Digit**
(0)

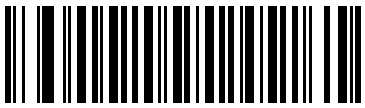
Two MSI Check Digits
(1)

Transmit MSI Check Digit(s)

Parameter # 46 (SSI # 2Eh)

Scan a bar code below to transmit MSI data with or without the check digit.

Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Enable)
(1)



***Do Not Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Disable)**
(0)

MSI Check Digit Algorithm

Parameter # 51 (SSI # 33h)

Two algorithms are possible for the verification of the second MSI check digit. Select the bar code below corresponding to the algorithm used to encode the check digit.

MOD 10/MOD 11
(0)

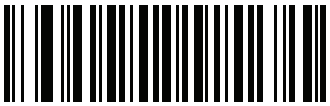
***MOD 10/MOD 10**
(1)

Chinese 2 of 5

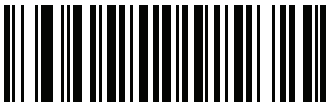
Enable/Disable Chinese 2 of 5

Parameter # 408 (SSI # F0h 98h)

To enable or disable Chinese 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Chinese 2 of 5
(1)



***Disable Chinese 2 of 5**
(0)

Matrix 2 of 5

Enable/Disable Matrix 2 of 5

Parameter # 618 (SSI # F1h 6Ah)

To enable or disable Matrix 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Matrix 2 of 5
(1)

***Disable Matrix 2 of 5**
(0)

Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5

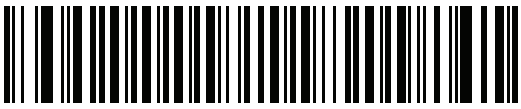
Parameter # L1 = 619 (SSI # F1h 6Bh), L2 = 620 (SSI # F1h 6Ch)

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The default is 4 to 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Matrix 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page G-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 (continued)

*Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length



Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range

Matrix 2 of 5 - Any Length

Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # 622 (SSI # F1h 6Eh)

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the Matrix 2 of 5 check digit.

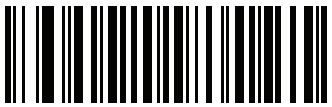
Enable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (1)

***Disable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (0)**

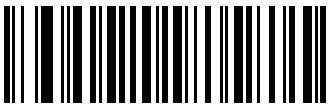
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # 623 (SSI # F1h 6Fh)

Scan a bar code below to transmit Matrix 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.



Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (1)



***Do Not Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (0)**

Korean 3 of 5

Enable/Disable Korean 3 of 5

Parameter # 581 (SSI # F1h 45h)

To enable or disable Korean 3 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

NOTE The length for Korean 3 of 5 is fixed at 6.

Enable Korean 3 of 5
(1)

***Disable Korean 3 of 5**
(0)

Inverse 1D

Parameter # 586 (SSI # F1h 4Ah)

This parameter sets the 1D inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse 1D bar codes.

***Regular**
(0)

Inverse Only
(1)

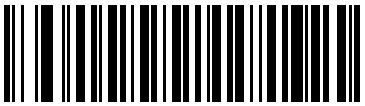
Inverse Autodetect
(2)

GS1 DataBar

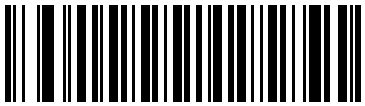
The variants of GS1 DataBar are DataBar-14, DataBar Expanded, and DataBar Limited. The limited and expanded versions have stacked variants. Scan the appropriate bar codes to enable or disable each variant of GS1 DataBar.

GS1 DataBar-14

Parameter # 338 (SSI # F0h 52h)



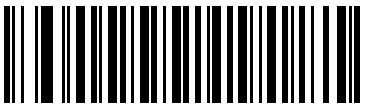
***Enable GS1 DataBar-14**
(1)



Disable GS1 DataBar-14
(0)

GS1 DataBar Limited

Parameter # 339 (SSI # F0h 53h)

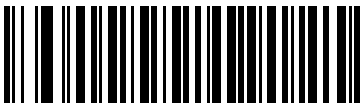


***Enable GS1 DataBar Limited**
(1)

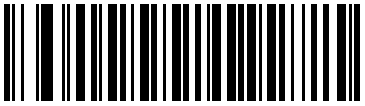
Disable GS1 DataBar Limited
(0)

GS1 DataBar Expanded

Parameter # 340 (SSI # F0h 54h)



***Enable GS1 DataBar Expanded**
(1)



Disable GS1 DataBar Expanded
(0)

Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN

Parameter # 397 (SSI # F0h, 8Dh)

This parameter only applies to GS1 DataBar-14 and GS1 DataBar Limited symbols not decoded as part of a Composite symbol. Enable this to strip the leading '010' from DataBar-14 and DataBar Limited symbols encoding a single zero as the first digit, and report the bar code as EAN-13.

For bar codes beginning with two or more zeros but not six zeros, this parameter strips the leading '0100' and reports the bar code as UPC-A. The UPC-A Preamble parameter that transmits the system character and country code applies to converted bar codes. Note that neither the system character nor the check digit can be stripped.

Enable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN
(1)

***Disable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN**
(0)

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level

Parameter # 728 (SSI # F1h D8h)

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for GS1 DataBar Limited bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security may result in reduced aggressiveness in scanning, so choose only that level of security necessary.

- Level 1 – No clear margin required. This complies with the original GS1 standard, yet might result in erroneous decoding of the DataBar Limited bar code when scanning some UPC symbols that start with digits “9” and “7”
- Level 2 – Automatic risk detection. This level of security may result in erroneous decoding of DataBar Limited bar codes when scanning some UPC symbols. The digital scanner defaults to Level 3, otherwise to Level 1.
- Level 3 – Security level reflects newly proposed GS1 standard that requires a 5 times trailing clear margin.
- Level 4 – Security level extends beyond the standard required by GS1. This level of security requires a 5 times leading and trailing clear margin.

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 1
(1)

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 2
(2)

***GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 3**
(3)

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 4
(4)

Composite

Composite CC-C

Parameter # 341 (SSI # F0h 55h)

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-C.

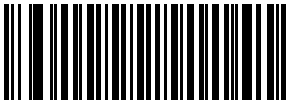
Enable CC-C
(1)

***Disable CC-C**
(0)

Composite CC-A/B

Parameter # 342 (SSI # F0h 56h)

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-A/B.



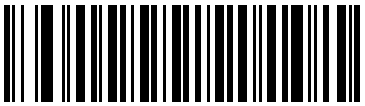
Enable CC-A/B
(1)

***Disable CC-A/B**
(0)

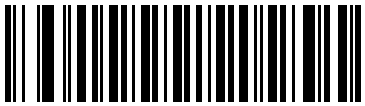
Composite TLC-39

Parameter # 371 (SSI # F0h 73h)

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type TLC-39.



Enable TLC39
(1)



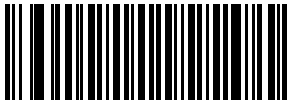
***Disable TLC39**
(0)

UPC Composite Mode

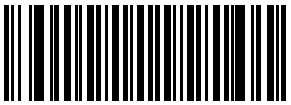
Parameter # 344 (SSI # F0h 58h)

Select an option for linking UPC symbols with a 2D symbol during transmission as if they were one symbol:

- Select **UPC Never Linked** to transmit UPC bar codes regardless of whether a 2D symbol is detected.
- Select **UPC Always Linked** to transmit UPC bar codes and the 2D portion. If 2D is not present, the UPC bar code does not transmit.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate UPC Composites**, the digital scanner determines if there is a 2D portion, then transmits the UPC, as well as the 2D portion if present.



***UPC Never Linked**
(0)



UPC Always Linked
(1)

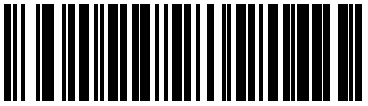
Autodiscriminate UPC Composites
(2)

Composite Beep Mode

Parameter # 398 (SSI # F0h, 8Eh)

To select the number of decode beeps when a composite bar code is decoded, scan the appropriate bar code.

Single Beep after both are decoded
(0)



***Beep as each code type is decoded**
(1)

Double Beep after both are decoded
(2)

GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes

Parameter # 427 (SSI # F0h, ABh)

Select whether to enable or disable this mode.

Enable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes
(1)

***Disable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes**
(0)

Postal Codes

US Postnet

Parameter # 89 (SSI # 59h)

To enable or disable US Postnet, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable US Postnet
(1)

***Disable US Postnet**
(0)

US Planet

Parameter # 90 (SSI # 5Ah)

To enable or disable US Planet, scan the appropriate bar code below.

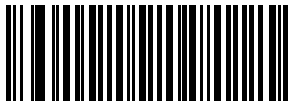
Enable US Planet
(1)

***Disable US Planet**
(0)

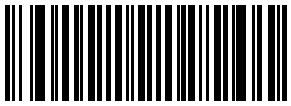
Transmit US Postal Check Digit

Parameter # 95 (SSI # 5Fh)

Select whether to transmit US Postal data, which includes both US Postnet and US Planet, with or without the check digit.



***Transmit US Postal Check Digit**
(1)



Do Not Transmit US Postal Check Digit
(0)

UK Postal

Parameter # 91 (SSI # 5Bh)

To enable or disable UK Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable UK Postal
(1)

***Disable UK Postal**
(0)

Transmit UK Postal Check Digit

Parameter # 96 (SSI # 60h)

Select whether to transmit UK Postal data with or without the check digit.

***Transmit UK Postal Check Digit (1)**

Do Not Transmit UK Postal Check Digit (0)

Japan Postal

Parameter # 290 (SSI # F0h, 22h)

To enable or disable Japan Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Japan Postal (1)

***Disable Japan Postal (0)**

Australia Post

Parameter # 291 (SSI # F0h, 23h)

To enable or disable Australia Post, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Australia Post
(1)

***Disable Australia Post**
(0)

Australia Post Format

Parameter # 718 (SSI # F1h, CEh)

To select one of the following formats for Australia Post, scan the appropriate bar code below:

- **Autodiscriminate** (or Smart mode) - Attempt to decode the Customer Information Field using the N and C Encoding Tables.

NOTE This option increases the risk of misdecodes because the encoded data format does not specify the Encoding Table used for encoding.

- **Raw Format** - Output raw bar patterns as a series of numbers 0 through 3.
- **Alphanumeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the C Encoding Table.
- **Numeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the N Encoding Table.

For more information on Australia Post Encoding Tables, refer to the *Australia Post Customer Barcoding Technical Specifications* available at http://www.auspost.com.au.

***Autodiscriminate**
(0)

Raw Format
(1)

Alphanumeric Encoding
(2)

Numeric Encoding
(3)

Netherlands KIX Code

Parameter # 326 (SSI # F0h, 46h)

To enable or disable Netherlands KIX Code, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Netherlands KIX Code (1)

***Disable Netherlands KIX Code (0)**

USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail

Parameter # 592 (SSI # F1h 50h)

To enable or disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail (1)

***Disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail (0)**

UPU FICS Postal

Parameter # 611 (SSI # F1h 63h)

To enable or disable UPU FICS Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable UPU FICS Postal
(1)

***Disable UPU FICS Postal**
(0)

2D Symbologies

Enable/Disable PDF417

Parameter # 15 (SSI # 0Fh)

To enable or disable PDF417, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable PDF417**
(1)

Disable PDF417
(0)

Enable/Disable MicroPDF417

Parameter # 227 (SSI # E3h)

To enable or disable MicroPDF417, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable MicroPDF417
(1)

***Disable MicroPDF417**
(0)

Code 128 Emulation

Parameter # 123 (SSI # 7Bh)

Enable this parameter to transmit data from certain MicroPDF417 symbols as Code 128. *AIM Code ID Character (1) on page 4-31* must be enabled for this parameter to work.

Enable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

]C1 if the first codeword is 903-905

]C2 if the first codeword is 908 or 909

]C0 if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Disable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

]L3 if the first codeword is 903-905

]L4 if the first codeword is 908 or 909

]L5 if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Code 128 Emulation.

NOTE Linked MicroPDF codewords 906, 907, 912, 914, and 915 are not supported. Use GS1 Composites instead.

Enable Code 128 Emulation
(1)

***Disable Code 128 Emulation**
(0)

Data Matrix

Parameter # 292 (SSI # F0h, 24h)

To enable or disable Data Matrix, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Data Matrix**
(1)

Disable Data Matrix
(0)

Data Matrix Inverse

Parameter # 588 (SSI # F1h 4Ch)

This parameter sets the Data Matrix inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse Data Matrix bar codes.

Regular
(0)

Inverse Only
(1)

***Inverse Autodetect**
(2)

Maxicode

Parameter # 294 (SSI # F0h, 26h)

To enable or disable Maxicode, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Maxicode
(1)

***Disable Maxicode**
(0)

QR Code

Parameter # 293 (SSI # F0h, 25h)

To enable or disable QR Code, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable QR Code**
(1)

Disable QR Code
(0)

QR Inverse

Parameter # 587 (SSI # F1h 4Bh)

This parameter sets the QR inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular QR bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse QR bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse QR bar codes.

***Regular**
(0)

Inverse Only
(1)

Inverse Autodetect
(2)

MicroQR

Parameter # 573 (SSI # F1h 3Dh)

To enable or disable MicroQR, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable MicroQR**
(1)

Disable MicroQR
(0)

Aztec

Parameter # 574 (SSI # F1h 3Eh)

To enable or disable Aztec, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Aztec**
(1)

Disable Aztec
(0)

Aztec Inverse

Parameter # 589 (SSI # F1h 4Dh)

This parameter sets the Aztec inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse Aztec bar codes.

Regular
(0)

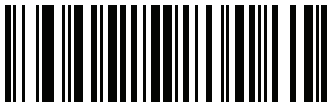
Inverse Only
(1)

***Inverse Autodetect**
(2)

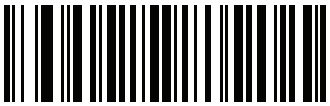
Han Xin

Parameter # 1167 (SSI # F8h 04h 8Fh)

To enable or disable Han Xin, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Han Xin
(1)



***Disable Han Xin**
(0)

Han Xin Inverse

Parameter # 1168 (SSI # F8h 04h 90h)

Select a Han Xin inverse decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - the decoder decodes Han Xin bar codes with normal reflectance only.
- **Inverse Only** - the decoder decodes Han Xin bar codes with inverse reflectance only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the decoder decodes both regular and inverse Han Xin bar codes.

***Regular**
(0)

Inverse Only
(1)

Inverse Autodetect
(2)

Symbology-Specific Security Levels

Redundancy Level

Parameter # 78 (SSI # 4Eh)

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode redundancy. Select higher redundancy levels for decreasing levels of bar code quality. As redundancy levels increase, the digital scanner's aggressiveness decreases.

Select the redundancy level appropriate for the bar code quality.

Redundancy Level 1

The following code types must be successfully read twice before being decoded:

Table 11-2 *Redundancy Level 1 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
Codabar	8 characters or less
MSI	4 characters or less
D 2 of 5	8 characters or less
I 2 of 5	8 characters or less

Redundancy Level 2

The following code types must be successfully read twice before being decoded:

Table 11-3 *Redundancy Level 2 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
All	All

Redundancy Level 3

Code types other than the following must be successfully read twice before being decoded. The following codes must be read three times:

Table 11-4 *Redundancy Level 3 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
MSI	4 characters or less
D 2 of 5	8 characters or less
I 2 of 5	8 characters or less
Codabar	8 characters or less

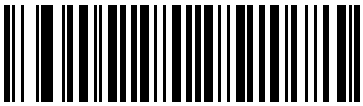
Redundancy Level 4

The following code types must be successfully read three times before being decoded:

Table 11-5 *Redundancy Level 4 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
All	All

***Redundancy Level 1**
(1)



Redundancy Level 2
(2)

Redundancy Level 3
(3)

Redundancy Level 4
(4)

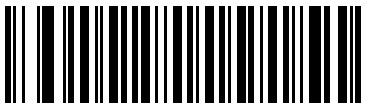
Security Level

Parameter # 77 (SSI # 4Dh)

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for delta bar codes, which include the Code 128 family, UPC/EAN, and Code 93. Select increasing levels of security for decreasing levels of bar code quality. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness, so choose only that level of security necessary for any given application.

- **Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most “in-spec” bar codes.
- **Security Level 1:** This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Security Level 2:** Select this option if Security level 1 fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Security Level 3:** If you selected Security Level 2 and misdecodes still occur, select this security level. Be advised, selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out of spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If you need this level of security, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

Security Level 0
(0)



***Security Level 1**
(1)

Security Level 2
(2)

Security Level 3
(3)

1D Quiet Zone Level

Parameter # 1288 (SSI # F8h 05h 08h)

This feature sets the level of aggressiveness in decoding bar codes with a reduced quiet zone (the area in front of and at the end of a bar code), and applies to symbologies enabled by a Reduced Quiet Zone parameter. Because higher levels increase the decoding time and risk of misdecodes, Symbol Technologies strongly recommends enabling only the symbologies which require higher quiet zone levels, and leaving Reduced Quiet Zone disabled for all other symbologies. Options are:

- 0 - The digital scanner performs normally in terms of quiet zone.
- 1 - The digital scanner performs more aggressively in terms of quiet zone.
- 2 - The digital scanner only requires one side EB (end of bar code) for decoding.
- 3 - The digital scanner decodes anything in terms of quiet zone or end of bar code.

1D Quiet Zone Level 0
(0)

***1D Quiet Zone Level 1**
(1)

1D Quiet Zone Level 2
(2)

1D Quiet Zone Level 3
(3)

Intercharacter Gap Size

Parameter # 381 (SSI # F0h, 7Dh)

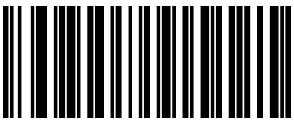
The Code 39 and Codabar symbologies have an intercharacter gap that is typically quite small. Due to various bar code-printing technologies, this gap can grow larger than the maximum size allowed, preventing the digital scanner from decoding the symbol. If this problem occurs, scan the **Large Intercharacter Gaps** parameter to tolerate these out-of-specification bar codes.

***Normal Intercharacter Gaps (06h)**

Large Intercharacter Gaps (0Ah)

Report Version

Scan the bar code below to report the version of software installed in the digital scanner.



Report Software Version

Macro PDF Features

Macro PDF is a special feature for concatenating multiple PDF symbols into one file. The digital scanner can decode symbols that are encoded with this feature, and can store more than 64 Kb of decoded data stored in up to 50 MacroPDF symbols.

CAUTION When printing, keep each Macro PDF sequence separate, as each sequence has unique identifiers. Do not mix bar codes from several Macro PDF sequences, even if they encode the same data. When scanning Macro PDF sequences, scan the entire Macro PDF sequence without interruption. If, when scanning a mixed sequence, the digital scanner emits two long low beeps (Low/Low) this indicates an inconsistent file ID or inconsistent symbology error.

Flush Macro Buffer

This flushes the buffer of all decoded Macro PDF data stored to that point, transmits it to the host device, and aborts from Macro PDF mode.

Flush Macro PDF Buffer

Abort Macro PDF Entry

This clears all currently-stored Macro PDF data in the buffer without transmission and aborts from Macro PDF mode.

Abort Macro PDF Entry

CHAPTER 12 INTELLIGENT DOCUMENT CAPTURE

Introduction

Intelligent Document Capture (IDC) is Symbol Technologies advanced image processing firmware for select imager based decoders. This chapter describes the IDC functionality, provides parameter bar codes to control its features, and includes a quick start procedure to get you started with IDC.

The IDC Process

Intelligent Document Capture:

1. Verifies a bar code is appropriate to use as an IDC anchor or link. See *Bar Code Acceptance Test*.
2. Determines the rectangular region to capture as an image. See *Capture Region Determination on page 12-2*.
3. Processes the captured image. See *Image Post Processing on page 12-3*.
4. Transmits the data. See *Data Transmission on page 12-3*.

Bar Code Acceptance Test

Upon decoding a bar code, the decoder checks to ensure that the bar code fits the description of a bar code that anchors or links to an IDC form. To be accepted as an IDC bar code:

- The symbology must be enabled in the IDC symbology parameter and enabled for decode in the decoder. The IDC firmware allows enabling between zero and eight symbologies simultaneously: Code 128, Code 39, Interleaved 2 of 5, Discrete 2 of 5, Codabar, PDF417, Data Matrix, and EAN-128.
- The decoded data must satisfy the values set in the *IDC Minimum Text Length* and *IDC Maximum Text Length* parameters. To disable either of these checks, set the value to zero.

If the bar code does not satisfy both requirements, it is sent as a normal (non-IDC) decode.

An IDC bar code is required when *IDC Operating Mode on page 12-5* is set to **Anchored** or **Linked**.

Free-Form operating mode does not require a bar code, but transmits decoded data if one is found and satisfies the requirements. If no bar code is decoded, the document capture process starts but can be subject to the following condition: specify a non-zero value for the *IDC Delay Time on page 12-15*. The decoder must wait for at least this amount of time after trigger pull before capturing a document, unless a bar code is decoded before the time expires.

If *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* is enabled, the bar code must be directly under the aiming pattern, within the decoder's decode range, and the region to capture completely within the engine's field-of-view.

Capture Region Determination

After accepting an IDC bar code, the firmware establishes the region to capture as an image. The method used depends on the setting of the *IDC Operating Mode* as follows.

The IDC firmware emits a single low beep after successfully capturing a region. The engine is then no longer capturing images and can be moved without disturbing the IDC output. Be sure to hold the trigger button until the decode beep, otherwise the IDC process may be aborted.

IDC Operating Mode = Anchored

A coordinate system is built based on the bar code in its rectified (de-skewed) form. The origin is the center of the bar code, and the x-axis is set toward the right, from the bar code's point of view. The unit module width of the bar code is the unit for x. Similarly, the y-axis is set toward the up direction. The unit for the y-axis is specified via the parameter *IDC Aspect on page 12-9*. This is the aspect ratio of a thin bar or space - the bar code's height is divided by this value to get the unit in the y-axis. The aspect ratio is calculated automatically if *IDC Aspect* is set to zero. The bar code can be of different sizes for the same form, as long as the center of the bar code is the same when the bar code's length changes.

From this coordinate system, the IDC area is determined using four parameters: offsets in x and y (*IDC X Coordinate*, *IDC Y Coordinate*) to the region's top-left corner, and width and height (*IDC Width*, *IDC Height*).

If the capture area is relatively large as compared to the bar code area, the calculation to obtain the capture area is prone to significant errors. A recommended solution is to enclose the form with a single black-lined rectangular border (a box), which is not in contact with any other line on the outside of the form (although it can be connected to lines on the inside of the form). When the *IDC Find Box Outline* is set, the firmware searches for the box, and does not decode if any edges are broken (such as by a protruding thumb).

The *IDC Zoom Limit* parameter controls the quality of the captured form. The IDC firmware rejects capturing a form unless the width is at least the *IDC Zoom Limit* percentage of the *IDC Width* parameter. For example, if *IDC Zoom Limit* is set to 100 and *IDC Width* is set to 150, the form must be at least 300 pixels wide before it is captured (each unit module is scaled to two pixels).

The *IDC Maximum Rotation* parameter controls the maximum rotation any edge of the form can have in relation to the scanner's horizontal or vertical axis.

IDC Operating Mode = Free-Form or Linked

The document capture region is a rectangular piece of paper, or a portion of it enclosed by a rectangular border. In either case, all four sides of the capture region must be completely within the engine's field-of-view, and there must be sufficient contrast at the border of the capture region. For example, if a piece of white paper contains the document to capture, it must be put in front of a dark background.

By default, the engine captures the largest rectangular region within the field-of-view. To specify a particular border type, use the *IDC Border Type* parameter.

The region must contain at least 10% of the field-of-view in two dimensions.

If an IDC bar code is decoded, its location is used to start the search for the capture region. Otherwise, the capture region is searched from the center of the field-of-view. IDC also uses the orientation of a decoded IDC bar code to orient the output image.

Image Post Processing

After determining the document capture region, the firmware de-skews and re-samples the region as described below. Enabling *IDC Captured Image Brighten* calls normalization, where the brightness of the image is made uniform, and contrast is enhanced as a large percent of background pixels is made completely white (a smaller percent of pixels is made completely black if the firmware determines there is no danger of enhancing the contrast of a very bland area). Enabling *IDC Captured Image Sharpen* enhances the sharpness of the image.

The image is re-sampled about one output pixel per input pixel for **Free-Form** or **Linked** modes and two pixels-per-module in **Anchored** mode.

The image is compressed and transmitted in one of the standard image formats selected by the *IDC File Format Selector*, *IDC Bits Per Pixel*, and *IDC JPEG Quality* parameters.

Note that it may take several seconds for post processing to complete, depending on the size of the captured region, the options enabled, and the decoder model.

Data Transmission

After processing the captured image, it is assembled with the decoded bar code data (if applicable) into an ISO/IEC 15434 style packet and transmitted to the host. The decoder issues the standard decode beep and the trigger can be released. Be sure the *USB Device Type on page 6-5* is set to **Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface**.

PC Application and Programming Support

For a sample application running on the Microsoft Windows operating system, contact your Symbol Technologies representative. This application displays bar code data and/or captured images from Intelligent Document Capture enabled decoders and allows setting and reading IDC parameters. Complete source code and documentation are also provided for developing custom applications. The application includes documentation for the ISO/IEC 15434 format as used by the IDC firmware and C# code to process it.

Parameters

This section describes the parameters controlling the IDC firmware and provides programming bar codes for setting them.

To set parameters requiring a range of values, scan the parameter bar code followed by two, three, or four bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to the desired value. Scan two numeric bar codes for parameters with a maximum value of less than 100, for example, *IDC Minimum Text Length*. *IDC Delay Time* requires scanning three digits since the maximum value is 200. Leading zeros are required.

Alternatively, use the sample application to set parameters using the parameter name. The application provides prompts and error checking to assist in setting the parameters correctly and easily. You must use an application to set a parameter to a negative value, as the *IDC X Coordinate* can require.

Table 12-1 *Intelligent Document Capture (IDC) Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Name	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Intelligent Document Capture (IDC)					
IDC Operating Mode	DocCap_MODE	594	F1h 52h	Off	*12-5*
IDC Symbology	DocCap_SYMBOLOGY	655	F1h 8Fh	001	*12-6*
IDC X Coordinate	DocCap_X	596	F4h F1h 54h	-151	*12-7*
IDC Y Coordinate	DocCap_Y	597	F4h F1h 55h	-050	*12-7*
IDC Width	DocCap_WIDTH	598	F1h 56h	0300	*12-8*
IDC Height	DocCap_HEIGHT	599	F1h 57h	0050	*12-8*
IDC Aspect	DocCap_ASPECT	595	F1h 53h	000	*12-9*
IDC File Format Selector	DocCap_FMT	601	F1h 59h	JPEG	*12-9*
IDC Bits Per Pixel	DocCap_BPP	602	F1h 5Ah	8 BPP	*12-10*
IDC JPEG Quality	DocCap_JPEG_Qual	603	F1h 5Bh	065	*12-10*
IDC Find Box Outline	Sig_FINDBOX	727	F1h D7h	Disable	*12-11*
IDC Minimum Text Length	DocCap_MIN_TEXT	656	F1h 90h	00	*12-11*
IDC Maximum Text Length	DocCap_MAX_TEXT	657	F1h 91h	00	*12-12*
IDC Captured Image Brighten	Sig_BRIGHTEN	654	F1h 8Eh	Enable	*12-12*
IDC Captured Image Sharpen	Sig_SHARPEN	658	F1h 92h	Enable	*12-13*
IDC Border Type	DocCap_BORDER	829	F2h 3Dh	None	*12-14*
IDC Delay Time	DocCap_DELAY	830	F2h 3Eh	000	*12-15*
IDC Zoom Limit	Sig_MIN_PERCENT	651	F1h 8Bh	000	*12-15*
IDC Maximum Rotation	Sig_MAX_ROT	652	F1h 8Ch	00	*12-16*

IDC Operating Mode

Parameter Name: DocCap_MODE

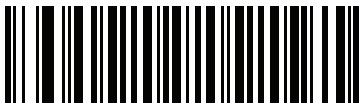
Parameter # 594 (SSI # F1h 52h)

Select the operating mode of the Intelligent Document Capture firmware:

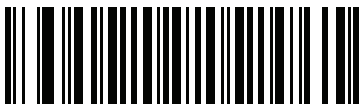
- **Off** - Disables the IDC feature.
- **Anchored** - Requires a bar code decode. The image capture region is based off this bar code.
- **Free-Form** - A printed border or page edge defines the image capture region. A bar code is optional.
- **Linked** - A printed border or page edge defines the image capture region. A bar code is required.

***Off**
(0)

Anchored
(1)



Free-Form
(2)



Linked
(3)

IDC Symbology

Parameter Name: DocCap_SYMBOLOGY

Parameter # 655 (SSI # F1h 8Fh)

Select the bar code type(s) to use when Document Capture mode is not set to **Off**. To enable more than one symbology at a time, simply add the values together. For example, to enable PDF417, Data Matrix, and Code 39 write a value of 98 (32 + 64 + 2).

Scan the bar code below, followed by three bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 000 to 255 decimal. The default is 001.

Table 12-2 *IDC Symbologies*

Symbology	Value (Decimal)
Code 128	1
Code 39	2
I 2 of 5	4
D 2 of 5	8
Codabar	16
PD 417	32
Data Matrix	64
EAN 128	128

IDC Symbology

IDC X Coordinate

Parameter Name: DocCap_X

Parameter # 596 (SSI # F4h F1h 54h)

Specify the horizontal offset to the top left corner of the region to capture relative to the center of the bar code. Negative values move toward the left. This parameter only applies when *IDC Operating Mode* is set to **Anchored.**

Scan the bar code below, followed by four bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of +/- 1279. The default is -151. Note that you must use an application to set a negative value.

IDC X Coordinate

IDC Y Coordinate

Parameter Name: DocCap_Y

Parameter # 597 (SSI # F4h F1h 55h)

Specify the vertical offset to the top left corner of the region to capture relative to the center of the bar code. Negative values move toward the top. This parameter only applies when *IDC Operating Mode* is set to **Anchored.**

Scan the bar code below, followed by four bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of +/- 1023. The default is -050. Note that you must use an application to set a negative value.

IDC Y Coordinate

IDC Width

Parameter Name: DocCap_WIDTH

Parameter # 598 (SSI # F1h 56h)

Specify the width of the region to capture. This parameter only applies when *IDC Operating Mode* is set to **Anchored.**

Scan the bar code below, followed by four bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 0000 to 1279. The default is 0300.

IDC Width

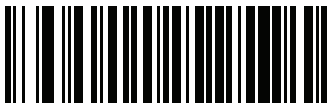
IDC Height

Parameter Name: DocCap_HEIGHT

Parameter # 599 (SSI # F1h 57h)

Specify the height of the region to capture. This parameter only applies when *IDC Operating Mode* is set to **Anchored.**

Scan the bar code below, followed by four bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 0000 to 1279. The default is 0050.



IDC Height

IDC Aspect

Parameter Name: DocCap_ASPECT

Parameter # 595 (SSI # F1h 53h)

Specify the bar code's aspect ratio of a thin bar or space. The bar code's height is divided by this value to get the unit in the y-axis. The aspect value is calculated automatically if this parameter is set to zero.

This parameter only applies when *IDC Operating Mode* is set to **Anchored**.

Scan the bar code below, followed by three bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 000 to 255. The default is 000.

IDC Aspect

IDC File Format Selector

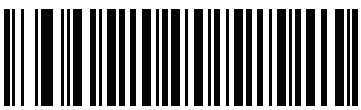
Parameter Name: DocCap_FMT

Parameter # 601 (SSI # F1h 59h)

Select a document capture file format appropriate for your system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The decoder stores captured areas in the selected format.

***JPEG**
(1)

BMP
(3)



TIFF
(4)

IDC Bits Per Pixel

Parameter Name: DocCap_BPP

Parameter # 602 (SSI # F1h 5Ah)

Select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing an image. Select 1 BPP for a black and white image, 4 BPP to assign 1 of 16 grey levels to each pixel, or 8 BPP to assign 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

NOTE The decoder ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support 8 BPP.

1 BPP
(0)

4 BPP
(1)

***8 BPP**
(2)

IDC JPEG Quality

Parameter Name: DocCap_JPEG_Qual

Parameter # 603 (SSI # F1h 5Bh)

Set the amount of JPEG compression to perform on the captured image. Higher numbers produce a better quality image but larger files.

Scan the bar code below, followed by three bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 005 to 100 decimal. The default is 065.

IDC JPEG Quality

IDC Find Box Outline

Parameter Name: Sig_FINDBOX

Parameter # 727 (SSI # F1h D7h)

Select **Enable Find Box Outline** to instruct the firmware to search for a rectangular border during document capture. This parameter only applies when *IDC Operating Mode* is set to **Anchored**.

***Disable Find Box Outline**
(0)

Enable Find Box Outline
(1)

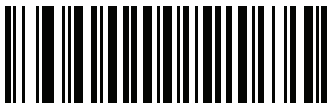
IDC Minimum Text Length

Parameter Name: DocCap_MIN_TEXT

Parameter # 656 (SSI # F1h 90h)

Specify the minimum number of characters encoded in a bar code for the IDC firmware to use it as an anchored or linked bar code. Set this to zero (the default) to disable all checking and use all bar codes.

Scan the bar code below, followed by two bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 00 to 55 decimal. The default is 00.



IDC Minimum Text Length

IDC Maximum Text Length

Parameter Name: DocCap_MAX_TEXT

Parameter # 657 (SSI # F1h 91h)

Specify the maximum number of characters encoded in a bar code for the IDC firmware to use it as an anchored or linked bar code. Set this to zero (the default) to disable all checking and use all bar codes.

Scan the bar code below, followed by two bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 00 to 55 decimal. The default is 00.

IDC Maximum Text Length

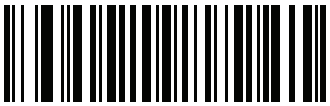
IDC Captured Image Brighten

Parameter Name: Sig_BRIGHTEN

Parameter # 654 (SSI # F1h 8Eh)

Enable **Captured Image Brighten** to make image brightness uniform and enhance contrast such that a large percent of the background pixels is made completely white (a smaller percentage of pixels is made completely black if the program determines there is no danger of enhancing the contrast of a very bland area).

NOTE This parameter is also used for Signature Capture.



Disable Captured Image Brighten (0)

***Enable Captured Image Brighten (1)**

IDC Captured Image Sharpen

Parameter Name: Sig_SHARPEN

Parameter # 658 (SSI # F1h 92h)

Enable this to enhance the sharpness of the image.

NOTE This parameter is also used for Signature Capture.

Disable Captured Image Sharpen
(0)

***Enable Captured Image Sharpen**
(1)

IDC Border Type

Parameter Name: DocCap_BORDER

Parameter # 829 (SSI # F2h 3Dh)

Select the style of border used to determine the outline of the capture region in **Free-Form** and **Linked** modes:

- Select **None** to capture the largest rectangular region within the field-of-view.
- Select **Black** to indicate that the border must be black (such as a printed rectangular border).
- Select **White** to indicate that the border must be white (e.g., paper edge on a dark background).
- Select **Advanced Edge Detection (AED)** to capture a region defined by edges of any color and potentially broken.

This parameter is only used in **Free-Form** and **Linked** modes.

***None**
(0)

Black
(1)

White
(2)

Advanced Edge Detection (AED)
(3)

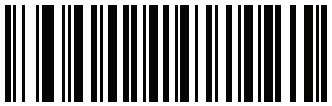
IDC Delay Time

Parameter Name: DocCap_DELAY

Parameter # 830 (SSI # F2h 3Eh)

Set the delay for capturing a document after a trigger pull. Decoding a bar code aborts this delay. This parameter only applies in **Free-Form** mode.

Scan the bar code below, followed by three bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 000 to 200 decimal in units of 10 msec. The default is 000.



IDC Delay Time

IDC Zoom Limit

Parameter Name: Sig_MIN_PERCENT

Parameter # 651 (SSI # F1h 8Bh)

Set the minimal "zoom" percentage value of a form for it to be considered for capture. This controls the quality of the captured form. The IDC firmware rejects capturing a form unless the width is at least the *IDC Zoom Limit* percentage of the *IDC Width* parameter. For example, if you set this parameter to 100 and *IDC Width* to 150, the form must be at least 300 pixels wide before it is captured (each unit module is scaled to two pixels).

Set this to zero (the default) to disable all checking. This parameter only applies in **Anchored** mode.

Scan the bar code below, followed by three bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 000 to 100 percent. The default is 000.

IDC Zoom Limit

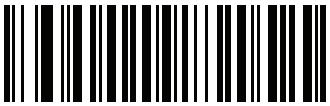
IDC Maximum Rotation

Parameter Name: Sig_MAX_ROT

Parameter # 652 (SSI # F1h 8Ch)

Set the maximum rotation any edge of the form can have in relation to the decoder's horizontal or vertical axis for it to be considered for capture. Set this to zero (the default) to disable all checking. This parameter only applies in **Anchored** mode.

Scan the bar code below, followed by two bar codes from *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* in the range of 00 to 45 decimal. The default is 00.



IDC Maximum Rotation

Quick Start

This section familiarizes you with some of the Intelligent Document Capture features. *IDC Demonstrations on page 12-18* includes instructions to demonstrate the Anchored, Free-Form, and Linked modes using a sample form to help provide an understanding of how to use IDC. These examples do not illustrate all capabilities of the advanced IDC firmware. Build upon these using different parameter settings and forms.

Sample IDC Setup

To set up IDC with the decoder:

1. Connect a decoder equipped with the Intelligent Document Capture feature to the host computer's USB port.
2. To set the decoder to the default settings and proper USB host type, scan **Set Defaults** followed by the **Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface** bar code. Allow time for the decoder to reset and the USB connection to remunerate after each scan before continuing.

Set Defaults

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface

3. Start the sample application and select the decoder in the **SNAPI Scanners** drop-down menu.
4. Set the parameters as specified in *IDC Demonstrations on page 12-18* using the sample application or by scanning parameter bar codes in this guide. The bar code in the sample form is Code 128, which is enabled by default for decoding and as a Document Capture symbology. You can change these settings for your IDC application.
5. Perform the list of suggestions in each demo. When scanning, aim the engine at the bar code in the center of the rectangle. Pull the engine back so the rectangle is fully contained in the aiming pattern. When you pull the trigger, the decoder emits a low tone to indicate that the IDC firmware identified and captured an image, then a decode beep to indicate that the data is processed and transmitted. There may be several seconds between the two beeps, depending on the size of the captured image and options selected (de-skew, brighten, etc). You can move the decoder after the first beep, but continue the hold the trigger or the decoder may end the session before sending the data.

IDC Demonstrations

Anchored Mode Demo

Set parameters to these values:

Table 12-3 *Anchored Mode Sample Parameter Values*

Parameter	Value
IDC Operating Mode	Anchored
IDC Height	100
IDC Width	90
IDC X Coordinate	-175
IDC Y Coordinate	-50

- Pull the trigger. The decoder decodes the bar code and captures an image of the text scroll.
- Rotate the form clockwise so the word **Capture** is along the bottom edge, and pull the trigger. The decoder decodes the bar code and captures the same image, including orientation. (This example also works with the form rotated counter-clockwise or upside down).
- Modify the values for height, width, x, and y. Pull the trigger. The captured area changes in size and location.
- Cover the bar code with a small piece of paper (or your finger) and pull the trigger. The decoder does not decode the bar code or capture an image.

What this demonstrates:

The Intelligent Document Capture Anchored mode captures an image of fixed size and location relative to a bar code on the page. Parameters control the height, width, and location. The IDC firmware requires that a bar code is present in order to capture an image, decodes it, and uses it to adjust the image to the upright orientation.

Free-Form Mode Demo

Set IDC Operating Mode to **Free-Form**.

- Pull the trigger. The decoder decodes the bar code and captures an image of the entire rectangle, including the contents.
- Modify the values for height, width, x, and y. Pull the trigger. Note that the captured image is not affected.
- Rotate the form clockwise so the word **Capture** is along the bottom edge, and pull the trigger. The decoder decodes the bar code and captures the same image, including orientation. (This example also works with the form rotated counter-clockwise or upside down).
- Cover the bar code with a small piece of paper and pull the trigger. The decoder does not decode the bar code and does not re-orient the captured image to the normal position, i.e., with the Symbol logo in upper-left corner.

What this demonstrates:

The Intelligent Document Capture Free-Form mode captures an image whose size and position are determined by a rectangular border on the page. It adjusts the image to the upright orientation if a bar code is found and decoded in the image.

Linked Mode Demo

Set IDC Operating Mode to **Linked.**

The examples from Free-Form mode also work in Linked mode except that the last one (with the bar code covered) does not decode the bar code or capture an image.

What this demonstrates:

The Intelligent Document Capture Linked mode captures an image whose size and position are determined by a rectangular border on the page. The IDC firmware requires that a bar code is present in order to capture an image, decodes it, and uses it to adjust the image to the upright orientation

Other Suggestions

Hold the decoder at an angle (up/down or side to side) to the page instead of perpendicular to it. The IDC firmware de-skews and adjusts the brightness (enabled by default) to produce a quality image when the decoder is held at less than ideal conditions.

Quick Start Form

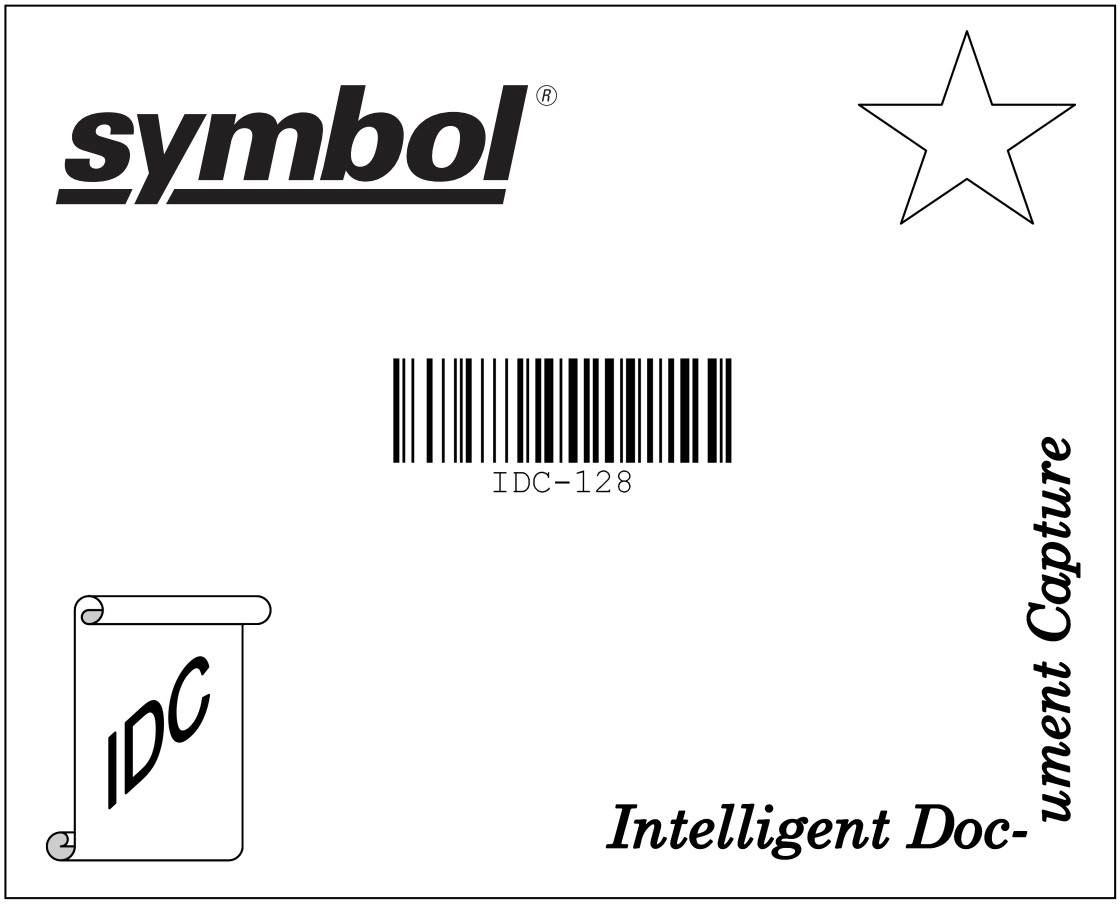


Figure 12-1 *Quick Start Form*

CHAPTER 13 OCR PROGRAMMING

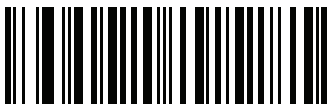
Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner for OCR programming. The digital scanner can read 6 to 60 point OCR typeface. It supports font types OCR-A, OCR-B, MICR-E13B, and US Currency Serial Number.

OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit.

All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



* Indicates Default — ***Disable OCR-A** — Feature/Option

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

OCR Parameter Defaults

Table 13-1 lists the defaults for OCR parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the Parameter Descriptions section beginning on *page 13-3*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 13-1 *OCR Programming Default Table*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
OCR Programming Parameters				
OCR-A	680	F1h A8h	Disable	*13-3*
OCR-A Variant	684	F1h ACh	Full ASCII	*13-3*
OCR-B	681	F1h A9h	Disable	*13-5*
OCR-B Variant	685	F1h ADh	Full ASCII	*13-6*
MICR E13B	682	F1h AAh	Disable	*13-9*
US Currency	683	F1h ABh	Disable	*13-10*
OCR Orientation	687	F1h AFh	0º	*13-10*
OCR Lines	691	F1h B3h	1	*13-12*
OCR Minimum Characters	689	F1h B1h	3	*13-12*
OCR Maximum Characters	690	F1h B2h	100	*13-13*
OCR Subset	686	F1h AEh	Selected font variant	*13-13*
OCR Quiet Zone	695	F1h B7h	50	*13-14*
OCR Template	547	F1h 23h	54R	*13-15*
OCR Check Digit Modulus	688	F1h B0h	1	*13-24*
OCR Check Digit Multiplier	700	F1h BCh	121212121212	*13-25*
OCR Check Digit Validation	694	F1h B6h	None	*13-26*
Inverse OCR	856	F2h 58h	Regular	*13-31*

OCR Programming Parameters

Enable/Disable OCR-A

Parameter # 680 (SSI # F1h A8h)

To enable or disable OCR-A, scan one of the following bar codes.

✓ ***NOTE*** OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 13-13* and *OCR Template on page 13-15*.

✓ ***NOTE*** All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.

Enable OCR-A
(1)

***Disable OCR-A**
(0)

OCR-A Variant

Parameter # 684 (SSI # F1 ACh)

Font variant sets a processing algorithm and default character subset for the given font. To choose a variant, scan one of the following bar codes. Selecting the most appropriate font variant optimizes performance and accuracy.

OCR-A supports the following variants:

- OCR-A Full ASCII

  !"#$()*+,-./0123456789<>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ\^

- OCR-A Reserved 1

  $*+-./0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-A Reserved 2

  $*+-./0123456789<>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-A Banking

  -0123456789<>

OCR-A Variant (continued)

Special banking characters output as the following representative characters:

- ⑂ outputs as f
- ⑁ outputs as c
- ⑃ outputs as h

NOTE Enable OCR-A before setting this parameter. If disabling OCR-A, set the variant to its default (OCR-A Full ASCII).

***OCR-A Full ASCII**
(0)

OCR-A Reserved 1
(1)

OCR-A Reserved 2
(2)

OCR-A Banking
(3)

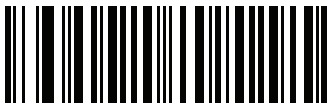
Enable/Disable OCR-B

Parameter # 681 (SSI # F1h A9h)

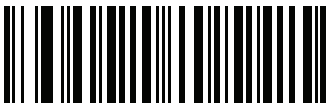
To enable or disable OCR-B, scan one of the following bar codes.

✓ ***NOTE*** OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 13-13* and *OCR Template on page 13-15*.

✓ ***NOTE*** All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.



Enable OCR-B
(1)



***Disable OCR-B**
(0)

OCR-B Variant

Parameter # 685 (SSI # F1h ADh)

OCR-B has the following variants. Selecting the most appropriate font variant affects performance and accuracy.

- OCR-B Full ASCII

  !#$%()*+,-./0123456789<>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ^|Ñ

- OCR-B Banking

  #+-0123456789<>JNP|

- OCR-B Limited

  +,-./0123456789<>ACENPSTVX

- OCR-B ISBN 10-Digit Book Numbers

  -0123456789>BCEINPSXz

- OCR-B ISBN 10 or 13-Digit Book Numbers

  -0123456789>BCEINPSXz

- OCR-B Travel Document Version 1 (TD1) 3-Line ID Cards

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-B Travel Document Version 2 (TD2) 2-Line ID Cards

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-B Travel Document 2 or 3-Line ID Cards Auto-Detect

  !#$%()*+,-./0123456789<>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ^|Ñ

- OCR-B Passport

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZÑ

- OCR-B Visa Type A

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-B Visa Type B

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZÑ

- OCR-B ICAO Travel Documents

  This allows reading either TD1, TD2, Passport, Visa Type A, or Visa Type B without switching between these options. It automatically recognizes the travel document read.

To choose a variant, scan one of the following bar codes. Selecting the following OCR-B variants automatically sets the appropriate *OCR Lines on page 13-12*. These five variants invoke extensive special algorithms and checking for that particular document type:

Variant	OCR Lines Setting
Passport	2
TD1 ID Cards	3
TD2 ID Cards	2
Visa Type A	2
Visa Type B	2

Selecting one of the ISBN Book Numbers automatically applies the appropriate ISBN checksum, so you do not need to set this.

OCR-B Variant (continued)

For the best performance in passport reading, fix the target passport and the decoder in place (6.5 - 7.5”).

✓ ***NOTE*** Enable OCR-B before setting this parameter. If disabling OCR-B, set the variant to its default (OCR-B Full ASCII).

***OCR-B Full ASCII**
(0)

OCR-B Banking
(1)

OCR-B Limited
(2)

OCR-B ISBN 10-Digit Book Numbers
(6)

OCR-B ISBN 10 or 13-Digit Book Numbers
(7)

OCR-B Travel Document Version 1 (TD1)
3 Line ID Cards
(3)

OCR-B Variant (continued)

OCR-B Travel Document Version 2 (TD2)
2-Line ID Cards
(8)

Travel Document 2 or 3-Line ID Cards Auto-Detect
(20)

OCR-B Passport
(4)

OCR-B Visa Type A
(9)

OCR-B Visa Type B
(10)

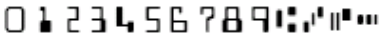
OCR-B ICAO Travel Documents
(11)

Enable/Disable MICR E13B

Parameter # 682 (SSI # F1h AAh)

To enable or disable MICR E13B, scan one of the following bar codes.

MICR E 13B uses the following characters:



TOAD characters (Transit, On Us, Amount, and Dash) output as the following representative characters:

 outputs as **t**

 outputs as **a**

 outputs as **o**

 outputs as **d**

NOTE OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 13-13* and *OCR Template on page 13-15*.

NOTE All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.

Enable MICR E13B
(1)

***Disable MICR E13B**
(0)

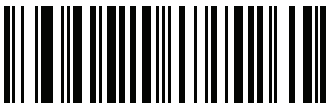
Enable/Disable US Currency Serial Number

Parameter # 683 (SSI # F1h ABh)

To enable or disable US Currency Serial Number, scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 13-13* and *OCR Template on page 13-15*.

NOTE All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.



Enable US Currency

***Disable US Currency**

OCR Orientation

Parameter # 687 (SSI # F1h AFh)

Select one of five options to specify the orientation of an OCR string to be read:

- 0^{o} to the imaging engine (default)
- 270^{o} clockwise (or 90^{o} counterclockwise) to the imaging engine
- 180^{o} (upside down) to the imaging engine
- 90^{o} clockwise to the imaging engine
- Omnidirectional

Setting an incorrect orientation can cause misdecodes.

OCR Orientation (continued)

***OCR Orientation 0°**
(0)

OCR Orientation 270° Clockwise
(1)

OCR Orientation 180° Clockwise
(2)

OCR Orientation 90° Clockwise
(3)

OCR Orientation Omnidirectional
(4)

OCR Lines

Parameter # 691 (SSI # F1h B3h)

To select the number of OCR lines to decode, scan one of the following bar codes. Selecting Visas, TD1, or TD2 ID cards automatically sets the appropriate **OCR Lines**. Also see *OCR-B Variant on page 13-6*.

***OCR 1 Line**
(1)

OCR 2 Lines
(2)

OCR 3 Lines
(3)

OCR Minimum Characters

Parameter # 689 (SSI # F1h B1h)

To select the minimum number of OCR characters (not including spaces) per line to decode, scan the following bar code, then scan a three-digit number between 003 and 100 using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* representing the number of OCR characters to decode. Strings of OCR characters less than the minimum are ignored. The default is 003.

OCR Minimum Characters

OCR Maximum Characters

Parameter # 690 (SSI # F1h B2h)

To select the maximum number of OCR characters (including spaces) per line to decode, scan the following bar code, then scan a three-digit number between 003 and 100 using the bar codes in *Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes* representing the number of OCR characters to decode. Strings of OCR characters greater than the maximum are ignored. The default is 100.

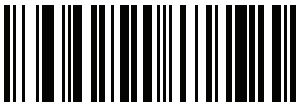
OCR Maximum Characters

OCR Subset

Parameter # 686 (SSI # F1h AEh)

Set an OCR subset to define a custom group of characters in place of a preset font variant. For example, if scanning only numbers and the letters A, B, and C, create a subset of just these characters to speed decoding. This applies a designated OCR Subset across all enabled OCR fonts.

To set or modify the OCR font subset, first enable the appropriate OCR font(s). Next, scan the following bar code, then scan numbers and letters to form the OCR Subset from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. Then scan **End of Message** in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*.



OCR Subset

To cancel an OCR subset, for OCR-A or OCR-B, scan OCR-A variant **Full ASCII**, or OCR-B variant **Full ASCII**.

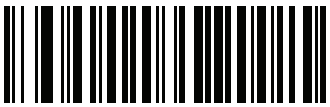
For MICR E13B or US Currency Serial Number, create a subset which includes all allowed characters in that character set, or scan an option from the *Default Parameters on page 4-5* and re-program the digital scanner.

OCR Quiet Zone

Parameter # 695 (SSI # F1h B7h)

This option sets the OCR quiet zone. The digital scanner stops scanning a field when it detects a sufficiently wide blank space. The width of this space is defined by the End of Field option. Used with parsers that tolerate slanted characters, the End of Field count is roughly a count of 8 for a character width. For example if set to 15, then two character widths are an end of line indicator for the parser. Larger end of field numbers require bigger quiet zones at each end of text line.

To set a quiet zone, scan the following bar code, then scan a two-digit number using the numeric keypad in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. The range of the quiet zone is 20 - 99 and the default is 50, indicating a six character width quiet zone.



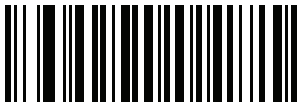
OCR Quiet Zone

OCR Template

Parameter # 547 (SSI # F1h 23h)

This option creates a template for precisely matching scanned OCR characters to a desired input format. Carefully constructing an OCR template eliminates scanning errors.

To set or modify the OCR decode template, scan the *OCR Template* bar code, then bar codes corresponding to numbers and letters on the following pages to form the template expression. Then scan **End of Message** in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. The default is **54R** which accepts any character OCR strings.



OCR Template

End of Message

Required Digit (9)

9

Only a numeric character is allowed in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99999	12987	30517	123AB

Required Alpha (A)

A

Only an alpha character is allowed in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
AAA	ABC	WXY	12F

Require and Suppress (0)

It is required that any character in this position, including space or reject, is suppressed from the output.

Template	Incoming data	Output
990AA	12QAB	12AB

Optional Alphanumeric (1)

1

When this option appears in the template string, the data validator accepts an alphanumeric character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99991	1234A	12345	1234<

Optional Alpha (2)

2

When this option appears in the template string, the data validator accepts an alpha character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
AAAA2	ABCDE	WXYZ	ABCD6

Alpha or Digit (3)

3

The data validator requires an alphanumeric character in this position to validate the incoming data.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
33333	12ABC	WXY34	12AB<

Any Including Space & Reject (4)

4

The template accepts any character in this position, including space and reject. Rejects are represented as an underscore (_) in the output. This is a good selection for troubleshooting.

Template	Valid data	Valid data
99499	12$34	34_98

Any except Space & Reject (5)

5

The template accepts any character in this position except a space or reject.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
55999	A.123	*Z456	A BCD

Optional Digit (7)

7

When this option appears in the template string, the template accepts a numeric character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99977	12345	789	789AB

Digit or Fill (8)

8

The data validator accepts any numeric or fill character in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Valid data
88899	12345	>>789	<<789

Alpha or Fill (F)

F

The data validator accepts any alpha or fill character in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Valid data
AAAFF	ABCXY	LMN>>	ABC<5

Optional Space ( )

Space

When this option appears in the template string, the template accepts a space if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99 99	12 34	1234	67891

Optional Small Special (.)

.

When this option appears in the template string, the data validator accepts a special character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters. Small special characters are **-** , and **.**

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
AA.99	MN.35	XY98	XYZ12

Other Template Operators

These template operators assist in capturing, delimiting, and formatting scanned OCR data.

Literal String (" and +)

“

+

Use either of these delimiting characters surrounding characters from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide* to define a literal string within a template that must be present in scanned OCR data. There are two characters used to delimit required literal strings; if one of the delimiter characters is present in the desired literal string, use the other delimiter.

Template	Valid data	Invalid data
"35+BC"	35+BC	AB+22

New Line (E)

E

To create a template of multiple lines, add **E** between the template of each single line.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
999EAAAA	321	987	XYZW
	BCAD	ZXYW	12

String Extract (C)

C

This operator combined with others defines a string of characters to extract from the scanned data. The string extract is structured as follows:

```
CbPe
```

Where:

- C is the string extract operator
- b is the string begin delimiter
- P is the category (one or more numeric or alpha characters) describing the string representation
- e is the string end delimiter

Values for b and e can be any scannable character. They are included in the output stream.

Template	Incoming data	Output
C>A>	XQ3>ABCDE>	>ABCDE>
	->ATHRUZ>123	>ATHRUZ>
	1ABCZXYZ	No Output

Ignore to End of Field (D)

D

This operator causes all characters after a template to be ignored. Use this as the last character in a template expression. Examples for the template 999D:

Template	Incoming data	Output
999D	123-PED	123
	357298	357
	193	193

Skip Until (P1)

P

1

This operator allows skipping over characters until a specific character type or a literal string is detected. It can be used in two ways:

```
P1ct
```

Where:

- `P1` is the Skip Until operator
- `c` is the type of character that triggers the start of output
- `t` is one or more template characters

```
P1"s"t
```

Where:

- `P1` is the Skip Until operator
- `"s"` is one or more literal string characters (see *Literal String (" and +) on page 13-19*) that trigger the start of output
- `t` is one or more template characters

The trigger character or literal string is included in output from a Skip Until operator, and the first character in the template should accommodate this trigger.

Template	Incoming data	Output
P1"PN"AA9999	123PN9876	PN9876
	PN1234	PN1234
	X-PN3592	PN3592

Skip Until Not (P0)

P

0

This operator allows skipping over characters until a specific character type or a literal string is not matched in the output stream. It can be used in two ways:

```
P0ct
```

Where:

- P0 is the Skip Until Not operator
- c is the type of character that triggers the start of output
- t is one or more template characters

```
P0"s"t
```

Where:

- P0 is the Skip Until Not operator
- "s" is one or more literal string characters (see *Literal String (" and +) on page 13-19*) that trigger the start of output
- t is one or more template characters

The trigger character or literal string is not included in output from a Skip Until Not operator.

Template	Incoming data	Output
P0A9999	BPN3456	3456
	PN1234	1234
	5341	No output

Template	Incoming data	Output
P0"PN"9999	PN3456	3456
	5341	No output
	PNPN7654	7654

Repeat Previous (R)

R

This operator allows a template character to repeat one or more times, allowing the capture of variable-length scanned data. The following examples capture two required alpha characters followed by one or more required digits:

Template	Incoming data	Output
AA9R	AB3	AB3
	PN12345	PN12345
	32RM52700	No output

Scroll Until Match (S)

S

This operator steps through scanned data one character at a time until the data matches the template.

Template	Incoming data	Output
S99999	AB3	No Output
	PN12345	12345
	32RM52700	52700

Multiple Templates

This feature sets up multiple templates for OCR decoding. To do this, follow the procedure described in *OCR Template on page 13-15* (scan the *OCR Template* bar code, then bar codes corresponding to numbers and letters to form the template expression, then **End of Message**) for each template in the multiple template string, using a capital letter **X** as a separator between the templates.

For example, set the *OCR Template* as **99999XAAAAA** to decode OCR strings of either **12345** or **ABCDE**.

Template Examples

Following are sample templates with descriptions of valid data for each definition.

Field Definition	Description
`"M"99977`	**M** followed by three digits and two optional digits.
`"X"997777"X"`	**X** followed by two digits, four optional digits, and an X.
`9959775599`	Two digits followed by any character, a digit, two optional digits, any two characters, and two digits.
`A55"-"999"-"99`	A letter followed by two characters, a dash, three digits, a dash, and two digits.
`33A"."99`	Two alphanumeric characters followed by a letter, a period, and two digits.
`999992991`	Five digits followed by an optional alpha, two digits, and an optional alphanumeric.
`"PN98"`	Literal field - **PN98**

OCR Check Digit Modulus

Parameter # 688 (SSI # F1h B0h)

This option sets OCR module check digit calculation. The check digit is the last digit (in the right most position) in an OCR string and improves the accuracy of the collected data. The check digit is the end product of a calculation made on the incoming data. For check digit calculation, for example Modulus 10, alpha and numeric characters are assigned numeric weights (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 13-25*). The calculation is applied to the character weights and the resulting check digit is added to the end of the data. If the incoming data does not match the check digit, the data is considered corrupt.

The selected check digit option does not take effect until you set **OCR Check Digit Validation**.

To choose the Check Digit Modulus, such as 10 for modulo 10, scan the following bar code, then scan a three-digit number from 001 to 099 representing the check digit using the numeric keypad in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. The default is **1**.

OCR Check Digit

OCR Check Digit Multiplier

Parameter # 700 (SSI # F1h BCh)

This option sets OCR check digit multipliers for the character positions. For check digit validation, each character in scanned data has an equivalent weight used in the check digit calculation. DS4308 OCR ships with the following weight equivalents:

0 = 0	A = 10	K = 20	U = 30
1 = 1	B = 11	L = 21	V = 31
2 = 2	C = 12	M = 22	W = 32
3 = 3	D = 13	N = 23	X = 33
4 = 4	E = 14	O = 24	Y = 34
5 = 5	F = 15	P = 25	Z = 35
6 = 6	G = 16	Q = 26	Space = 0
7 = 7	H = 17	R = 27	
8 = 8	I = 18	S = 28	
9 = 9	J = 19	T = 29	

All other characters are equivalent to one (1).

You can define the multiplier string if it is different from the default.

121212121212 (default)

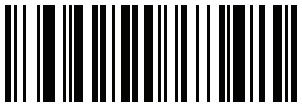
123456789A (for ISBN, Product Add Right to Left. See *OCR Check Digit Validation on page 13-26*)

For example:

ISBN	0	2	0	1	1	8	3	9	9	4	
Multiplier	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Product	0	18	0	7	6	40	12	27	18	4	
Product add	0+	18+	0+	7+	6+	40+	12+	27+	18+	4=	132

ISBN uses modulo 11 for its check digit. In this case, 132 is divisible by 11, so it passes the check digit.

To set the check digit multiplier, scan the following bar code, then scan numbers and letters to form the multiplier string from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. Then scan **End of Message** in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*.



OCR Check Digit Multiplier

OCR Check Digit Validation

Parameter # 694 (SSI # F1h B6h)

Use **OCR Check Digit Validation** to protect against scanning errors by applying a check digit validation scheme. The following is a list of options.

None

No check digit validation, indicating no check digit is applied. This is the default.

***No Check Digit**
(0)

Product Add Left to Right

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 13-25*). Each digit representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the multiplier, and the sum of these products is computed. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	6	
Multiplier	1	2	3	4	5	6	
Product	1	6	6	16	25	36	
Product add	1+	6+	6+	16+	25+	36=	90

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 90 is divisible by 10 (the remainder is zero).

Product Add Left to Right
(3)

Product Add Right to Left

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 13-25*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of these products is computed. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132459 (check digit is 9)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	9	
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Product	6	15	8	12	10	9	
Product add	6+	15+	8+	12+	10+	9=	60

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 60 is divisible by 10 (the remainder is 0).

Product Add Right to Left (1)

Digit Add Left to Right

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 13-25*). Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of each individual digit in all of the products is then calculated. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

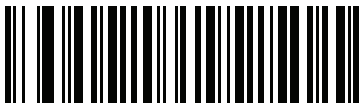
Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	6	
Multiplier	1	2	3	4	5	6	
Product	1	6	6	16	25	36	
Digit add	1+	6+	6+	1+6+	2+5+	3+6=	36

The Check Digit Modulus is 12. It passes because 36 is divisible by 12 (the remainder is 0).



Digit Add Left to Right (4)

Digit Add Right to Left

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 13-25*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of each individual digit in all of the products is then calculated. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	6	
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Product	6	15	8	12	10	6	
Digit add	6+	1+5+	8+	1+2+	1+0+	6=	30

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 30 is divisible by 10 (the remainder is 0).

Digit Add Right to Left (2)

Product Add Right to Left Simple Remainder

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 13-25*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of these products **except for the check digit's product** is computed. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is equal to the check digit's product.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 122456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	2	2	4	5		6
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2		1
Product	6	10	8	12	10		6
Product add	6+	10+	8+	12+	10=	46	6

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 46 divided by 10 leaves a remainder of 6.

Product Add Right to Left Simple Remainder (5)

Digit Add Right To Left Simple Remainder

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 13-25*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of each individual digit in all of the products **except for the check digit's product** is then calculated. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is equal to the check digit's product.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 122459 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	2	2	4	5		9
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2		1
Product	6	10	8	12	10		9
Digit add	6+	1+0+	8+	1+2+	1+0=	19	9

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 19 divided by 10 leaves a remainder of 9.

Digit Add Right to Left Simple Remainder (6)

Health Industry - HIBCC43

This is the health industry module 43 check digit standard. The check digit is the modulus 43 sum of all the character values in a given message, and is printed as the last character in a given message.

Example:

Supplier Labelling Data Structure: + A 1 2 3 B J C 5 D 6 E 7 1

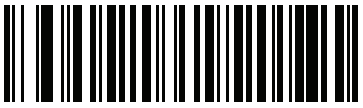
Sum of values: 41+10+1+2+3+11+19+12+5+13+6+14+7+1 = 145

Divide 145 by 43. The quotient is 3 with a remainder of 16. The check digit is the character corresponding to the value of the remainder (see *Table 13-2*), which in this example is 16, or **G**. The complete Supplier Labelling Data Structure, including the check digit, therefore is:

A 1 2 3 B J C 5 D 6 E 7 1 G

Table 13-2 *Table of Numeric Value Assignments for Computing HIBC LIC Data Format Check Digit*

0 = 0	9 = 9	I = 18	R = 27	- = 36
1 = 1	A = 10	J = 19	S = 28	. = 37
2 = 2	B = 11	K = 20	T = 29	Space = 38
3 = 3	C = 12	L = 21	U =30	$ = 39
4 = 4	D = 13	M = 22	V = 31	/ = 40
5 = 5	E = 14	N = 23	W = 32	+ = 41
6 = 6	F = 15	O = 24	X = 33	% = 42
7 = 7	G = 16	P = 25	Y = 34	
8 = 8	H = 17	Q = 26	Z = 35	



Health Industry - HIBCC43
(9)

Inverse OCR

Parameter # 856 (SSI # F2h 58h)

Inverse OCR is white or light words on a black or dark background. Select an option for decoding inverse OCR:

- **Regular Only** - decode regular OCR (black on white) strings only.
- **Inverse Only** - decode inverse OCR (white on black) strings only.
- **Autodiscriminate** - decodes both regular and inverse OCR strings.

***Regular Only**
(0)

Inverse Only
(1)

Autodiscriminate
(2)

CHAPTER 14 DRIVER'S LICENSE SET UP (DS4308-DL)

Introduction

The DS4308-DL digital scanner is capable of parsing out information from standard US driver's licenses and certain other American Association of Motor Vehicle Administrators (AAMVA) compliant ID cards. This is achieved using internally embedded algorithms, where scanning bar codes activates algorithms internally embedded in the digital scanner to produce formatted data. Use the formatted data for age verification, credit card application information, and more.

This chapter describes how to program the DS4308-DL digital scanner to read and use the data contained in the 2D bar codes on US driver's licenses and AAMVA compliant ID cards.

Table 14-1 *DL Parsing Parameter Table*

Driver's License Parsing

To enable driver's license parsing on the digital scanner, scan the **Embedded Driver's License Parsing** bar code. This does not require Symbol Technologies software (.DLL).

Scan the bar codes on the following pages in the order indicating the sequence of data fields that the digital scanner outputs. See *Parsing Driver's License Data Fields (Embedded Driver's License Parsing) on page 14-3* for more information.

As jurisdictional updates become available, Symbol Technologies updates a series of bar codes on the support web site: http//www.motorolasolutions.com/support.

These bar codes contain embedded software. Scanning these in conjunction with the bar codes on *page 14-4* download jurisdictional software updates to the digital scanner. The updates reside in the digital scanner's flash memory and apply when the digital scanner is next used.

***No Driver's License Parsing**

Embedded Driver's License Parsing

Parsing Driver's License Data Fields (Embedded Driver's License Parsing)

To begin programming a parsing rule:

1. Scan *Begin New Driver's License Parse Rule on page 14-4*.
2. Scan any of the field bar codes on the following pages, or ***Send Keystroke (Control Characters and Keyboard Characters) on page 14-20*** to complete the parsing rule.
3. After entering the entire rule, scan *Save Driver's License Parse Rule on page 14-4* to save the rule.

> ***NOTE*** Only ONE driver's license parsing rule may be stored in memory at any time. Saving a new rule replaces the prior rule.

To abort the programming sequence at any time during programming, scan *Quit Entering Driver's License Rule on page 14-4*. Any previously saved rule is retained.

To erase a programmed saved rule, scan *Erase Driver's License Parse Rules on page 14-4*.

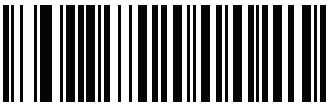
Embedded Driver's License Parsing Criteria - Code Type

After specifying the fields and their order for the parsed driver's license, you can also apply standard ADF rules to the parsed data using the **Parsed Driver's License** criterion bar code in the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide.*

> ***NOTE*** Only create standard ADF rules on parsed driver's license data when configured for Embedded Driver's License Parsing.

See *Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example on page 14-43* for a sample ADF rule using this code type criterion.

Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes



Begin New Driver's License Parse Rule

Save Driver's License Parse Rule

Quit Entering Driver's License Rule

Erase Driver's License Parse Rules

Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

The parse fields currently supported begin below. Not all IDs present data in the same format. For example, some IDs may have separate fields for first name, last name, and middle initial, and others may have a single field with the entire name. In addition, some IDs may expire on the subject's birth date and the actual expiration date field may only indicate the year. In order to present data in a consistent format, the following nine bar codes return data that may be calculated from the actual data contained within the ID bar code.

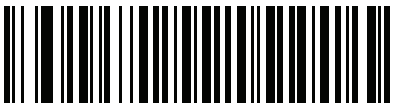
First Name

Middle Name/Initial

Last Name

Name Suffix

Name Prefix



Expiration Date

Birth Date

Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Issue Date

ID Number (Formatted)

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes

AAMVA Issuer ID

Full Name

Last Name

First Name

Middle Name / Initial

Name Suffix

Name Prefix

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Mailing Address Line 1

Mailing Address Line 2

Mailing Address City

Mailing Address State

Mailing Address Postal Code

Home Address Line 1

Home Address Line 2

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Home Address City

Home Address State

Home Address Postal Code

License ID Number

License Class

License Restrictions

License Endorsements

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Height (Feet and/or Inches)

Height (Centimeters)

Weight (Pounds)

Weight (Kilograms)

Eye Color

Hair Color

License Expiration Date

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Birth Date

Gender

License Issue Date

License Issue State

Social Security Number

Permit Class

Permit Expiration Date

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Permit ID Number

Permit Issue Date

Permit Restrictions

Permit Endorsements

AKA Social Security Name

AKA Full Name

AKA Last Name

AKA First Name

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

AKA Middle Name / Initial

AKA Name Suffix

AKA Name Prefix

AKA Birth Date

Issue Timestamp

Number of Duplicates

Medical Codes

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Organ Donor

Nonresident

Customer ID

Weight Range

Document Discriminator

Country

Federal Commission Codes

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Place of Birth

Audit Information

Inventory Control

Race / Ethnicity

Std Vehicle Class

Std Endorsements

Std Restrictions

AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes (continued)

Class Description

Endorsement Description

Restrictions Description

Height in Inches

Height in Centimeters

Parser Version ID Bar Codes

Include this field to emit embedded parser software version identification

Parser Version ID

User Preferences

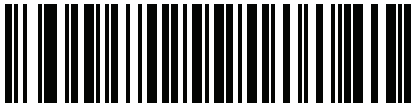
Set Default Parameter

Scan this bar code to return all parameters to the default values listed in *Table A on page A-1*.

***Set All Defaults**

Output Gender as M or F

Scan this bar code to report the gender as **M** or **F** instead of a numeric value**.**



Output gender as M or F

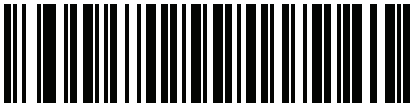
Date Format

Use these bar codes to select the date format that is displayed. Date fields include the following:

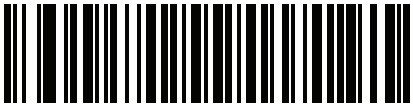
- **CCYY** = 4-digit year (**CC**=2-digit century [00-99], **YY**=2-digit year in the century [00-99])
- **MM** = 2-digit month [01-12]
- **DD** = 2-digit day of the month [00-31]

The default is Date Format **CCYYMMDD**.

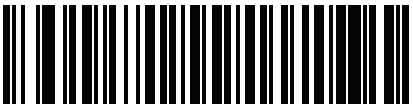
NOTE To specify a date separator, i.e., a character separating each field of the date, scan the **Send <character>** bar code that corresponds to the alphanumeric character to use as the date separator immediately following the date format bar code. To select no date separator, scan the **No Separator** DL parsing rule immediately following the date format bar code.



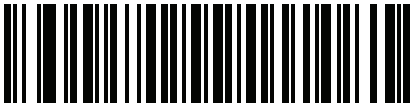
***CCYYMMDD**



CCYYDDMM

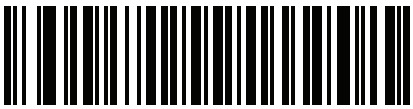


MMDDCCYY



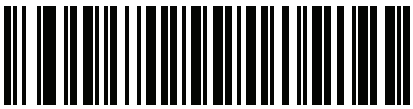
MMCCYYDD

DDMMCCYY

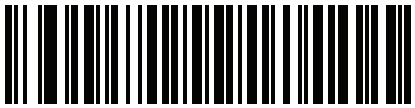


DDCCYYMM

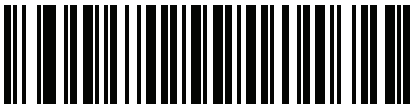
Date Format (continued)



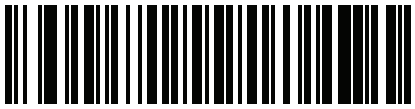
YYMMDD



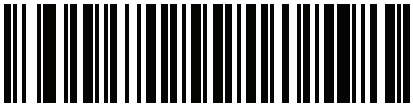
YYDDMM



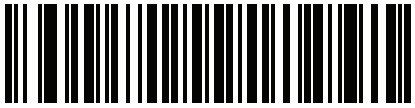
MMDDYY



MMYYDD



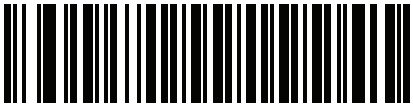
DDMMYY



DDYYMM

No Separator

Scan this bar code immediately following a date format bar code to use no separator character between the date fields.



No Separator

Send Keystroke (Control Characters and Keyboard Characters)

Control Characters

Scan a **Send** bar code for the keystroke to send.

Send Control A

Send Control B

Send Control C

Send Control D

Send Control E

Send Control F

Send Control G

Send Control H

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control I

Send Control J

Send Control K

Send Control L

Send Control M

Send Control N

Send Control O

Send Control P

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control Q

Send Control R

Send Control S

Send Control T

Send Control U

Send Control V

Send Control W

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control X

Send Control Y

Send Control Z

Send Control [

**Send Control **

Send Control]

Control Characters (continued)

Send Control 6

Send Control -

Keyboard Characters

Scan a **Send** bar code for the keyboard characters to send.

Send Space

Send !

Send “

Send #

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send $

Send %

Send &

Send ‘

Send (

Send)

Send *

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send +

Send ,

Send -

Send .

Send /

Send 0

Send 1

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send 2

Send 3

Send 4

Send 5

Send 6

Send 7

Send 8

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send 9

Send :

Send ;

Send <

Send =

Send >

Send ?

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send @

Send A

Send B

Send C

Send D

Send E

Send F

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send G

Send H

Send I

Send J

Send K

Send L

Send M

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send N

Send O

Send P

Send Q

Send R

Send S

Send T

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send U

Send V

Send W

Send X

Send Y

Send Z

Send [

Keyboard Characters (continued)

**Send **

Send]

Send ^

Send _

Send `

Send a

Send b

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send c

Send d

Send e

Send f

Send g

Send h

Send i

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send j

Send k

Send l

Send m

Send n

Send o

Send p

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send q

Send r

Send s

Send t

Send u

Send v

Send w

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send x

Send y

Send z

Send {

Send |

Send }

Send ~

Keyboard Characters (continued)

Send Tab Key

Send Enter Key

Parsing Rule Example

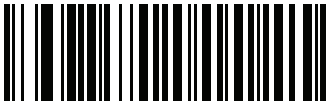
Scan the following bar codes in sequence to program the digital scanner to extract and transmit first, middle, and last names; mailing address line 1; mailing address line 2; mailing address city; mailing address state; mailing address postal code; and, date of birth. Then, scan a driver's license bar code.

NOTE This example applies to RS-232. To use this example with a USB interface, enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11* to send the Enter key properly.

1

Embedded Driver's License Parsing

2



Begin New Driver's License Parse Rule

3

First Name

4

Send Space

5

Middle Name / Initial

6

Send Space

Parsing Rule Example (continued)

7

Last Name

8

Send Enter Key

9

Mailing Address Line 1

10

Send Space

11

Mailing Address Line 2

12

Send Enter Key

Parsing Rule Example (continued)

13

Mailing Address City

14

Send Space

15

Mailing Address State

16

Send Space

17

Mailing Address Postal Code

Parsing Rule Example (continued)

18

Send Enter Key

19

Birth Date

20

Send Enter Key

21

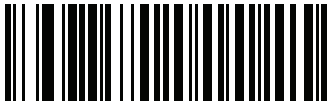
Save Driver's Licence Parse Rule

Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example

This example creates a parsing rule for parsed data configured to result in the format:

Last Name, First Name

1



Begin New Driver’s License Parse Rule

2

Last Name

3

Send ,

4

Send Space

5

First Name

6

Save Driver’s Licence Parse Rule

Then, in order to limit the full name to 15 characters, create the following ADF rule:

1

Begin New Rule

2

Criterion: Parsed Driver's License

3

Action: Send Next 15 Characters

4

Save Rule

For a license belonging to Michael Williams, the parsed data is Williams, Michael and Williams, Micha after applying the previous ADF rule.

CHAPTER 15 123SCAN2

Introduction

123Scan² is an easy to use, PC-based software tool that enables rapid customized setup of Symbol Technologies scanners.

123Scan² uses a wizard tool to guide users through a streamlined set up process. Settings are saved in a configuration file that can be distributed via e-mail, electronically downloaded via a USB cable, or used to generate a sheet of scannable programming bar codes.

Additionally 123Scan² can upgrade scanner firmware, check online to enable support for newly released products, generate a collection of multi-setting bar codes if the number of settings is very large, stage a large number of scanners simultaneously, generate reports with asset tracking information, and create custom products.

Communication with 123Scan^2

To communicate with the 123Scan² program which runs on a host computer running a Windows XP SP2 or Windows 7 operating system, use a USB cable to connect the scanner to the host computer.

123Scan² Requirements

- Host computer with Windows XP SP2 or Windows 7
- Scanner
- USB cable.

For more information on123Scan², go to:

http://www.motorolasolutions.com/123Scan

For a 1 minute tour of 123Scan², go to:

http://www.motorolasolutions.com/scannerhowtovideos

To download 123Scan² software and access the Help file integrated in the utility, go to:

http://support.symbol.com/support/product/123Scan2.html

Scanner SDK, Other Software Tools, and Videos

Tackle all your scanner programming needs with our diversified set of software tools. Whether you need to simply stage a device, or develop a fully featured application with image and data capture as well as asset management, these tools help you every step of the way. To download any of the free tools listed below, go to: www.motorolasolutions.com/scannersoftware.

- 123Scan2 configuration utility (described in this chapter)
- Scanner SDK for Windows
- How-to videos
- Virtual COM port driver
- OPOS driver
- JPOS driver
- Scanner user documentation.

CHAPTER 16 ADVANCED DATA FORMATTING

Introduction

Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) is a means of customizing data before transmission to the host device. Use ADF to edit scan data to suit requirements. Implement ADF by scanning a related series of bar codes which program the scanner with ADF rules.

For information and programming bar codes for ADF, refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*, p/n 72E-69680-xx.

APPENDIX A STANDARD DEFAULT PARAMETERS

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
User Preferences				
Set Default Parameter	N/A	N/A	Restore Defaults	*4-5*
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	236	ECh	Enable	*4-6*
Beep After Good Decode	56	38h	Enable	*4-7*
Direct Decode Indicator	859	F2h 5Bh	Disable	*4-8*
Beeper Volume	140	8Ch	High	*4-9*
Beeper Tone	145	91h	Medium	*4-10*
Beeper Duration	628	F1h 74h	Medium	*4-11*
Suppress Power Up Beeps	721	F1h D1h	Do Not Suppress	*4-11*
Decode Pager Motor	613	F1h 65h	Disable	*4-12*
Decode Pager Motor Duration	626	F1h 72h	150 msec	*4-12*
Night Mode Trigger	1215	F8h 04h BFh	Enable	*4-15*
Night Mode Toggle	N/A	N/A	N/A	*4-15*
Low Power Mode	128	80h	Disable	*4-16*
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	146	92h	1 Hour	*4-17*
Hand-Held Trigger Mode	138	8Ah	Auto Aim	*4-19*
Hands-Free Mode	630	F1h 76h	Enable	*4-20*
Hands Free/Hand-Held Auto Switching (DS4308P Only)	N/A	N/A	N/A	*4-20*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern	306	F0h 32h	Enable	*4-21*
Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern	590	F1h 4Eh	Enable Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF	*4-22*
Hands-Free Motionless Timeout Hands-Free Motionless Timeout (DS4308P Only)	745	F1h E9h	2.0 seconds	*4-22*
Motion Detect Range (DS4308P Only)	827	F2h 3Bh	Full	*4-23*
Picklist Mode	402	F0h 92h	Disabled Always	*4-24*
Continuous Bar Code Read	649	F1h 89h	Disable	*4-25*
Unique Bar Code Reporting	723	F1h D3h	Enable	*4-25*
Decode Session Timeout	136	88h	9.9 Sec	*4-26*
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	137	89h	0.5 Sec	*4-26*
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	144	90h	0.1 sec	*4-27*
Fuzzy 1D Processing	514	F1h 02h	Enable	*4-27*
Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only)	537	F1h 19h	Auto	*4-28*
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	716	F1h CCh	Normal	*4-29*
PDF Prioritization	719	F1h CFh	Disable	*4-30*
PDF Prioritization Timeout	720	F1h D0h	200 ms	*4-30*
Presentation Mode Field of View	609	F1h 61h	Full	*4-31*
Decoding Illumination	298	F0h 2Ah	Enable	*4-31*
Post Decode Illumination (DS4308P Only)	809	F2h 29h	Always Off	*4-32*
Illumination Brightness	669	F1h 9Dh	High	*4-32*
Low Light Scene Detection	810	F2h 2Ah	Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection	*4-33*
Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held Trigger Mode Only)	858	F2h 5Ah	More Motion Tolerance	*4-34*
Movement Sensitivity (DS4308P Only)	1300	F8h 05h 14h	High	*4-34*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Object Detection Method (DS4308P Only)	857	F2h 59h	IR Sensor Detection	*4-35*
Miscellaneous Options				
Enter Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	*4-36*
Transmit Code ID Character	45	2Dh	None	*4-36*
Prefix Value	99, 105	63h, 69h	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-37*
Suffix 1 Value Suffix 2 Value	98, 104 100, 106	62h, 68h 64h, 6Ah	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-37*
Scan Data Transmission Format	235	EBh	Data as is	*4-38*
FN1 Substitution Values	103, 109	67h, 6Dh	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-39*
Transmit “No Read” Message	94	5E	Disable	*4-40*
Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval	1118	F8h 04h 5Eh	Disable	*4-41*
Imaging Preferences				
Operational Modes	N/A	N/A	N/A	*5-4*
Image Capture Illumination	361	F0h 69h	Enable	*5-5*
Image Capture Autoexposure	360	F0h 68h	Enable	*5-5*
Fixed Exposure	567	F4h F1h 37h	100	*5-6*
Fixed Gain	568	F1h 38h	50	*5-6*
Gain / Exposure Priority for Snapshot Mode	562	F1h 32h	Autodetect	*5-7*
Snapshot Mode Timeout	323	F0h 43h	0 (30 seconds)	*5-8*
Snapshot Aiming Pattern	300	F0h 2Ch	Enable	*5-9*
Silence Operational Mode Changes	1293	F8h 05h 0Dh	Disable (Do Not Silence)	*5-9*
Image Cropping	301	F0h 2Dh	Disable	*5-10*
Crop to Pixel Addresses	315 316 317 318	F4h F0h 3Bh F4h F0h 3Ch F4h F0h 3Dh F4h F0h 3Eh	0 top 0 left 799 bottom 1279 right	*5-11*
Image Size (Number of Pixels)	302	F0h 2Eh	Full	*5-12*
Image Brightness (Target White)	390	F0h 86h	180	*5-13*
JPEG Image Options	299	F0h 2Bh	Quality	*5-13*
JPEG Target File Size	561	F1h 31h	160 kB	*5-14*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
JPEG Quality and Size Value	305	F0h 31h	65	*5-14*
Image Enhancement	564	F1h 34h	Low (1)	*5-15*
Image File Format Selection	304	F0h 30h	JPEG	*5-16*
Image Rotation	665	F1h 99h	0	*5-17*
Bits per Pixel (BPP)	303	F0h 2Fh	8 BPP	*5-18*
Signature Capture	93	5Dh	Disable	*5-19*
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	313	F0h 39h	JPEG	*5-20*
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	314	F0h 3Ah	8 BPP	*5-21*
Signature Capture Width	366	F4h F0h 6Eh	400	*5-22*
Signature Capture Height	367	F4h F0h 6Fh	100	*5-22*
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	421	F0h A5h	65	*5-22*
Video Mode Format Selector	916	F2h 94h	JPEG	*5-23*
Video View Finder	324	F0h 44h	Disable	*5-23*
Target Video Frame Size	328	F0h 48h	2200 bytes	*5-24*
Video View Finder Image Size	329	F0h 49h	1700 bytes	*5-24*
USB Host Parameters				
USB Device Type	N/A	N/A	USB Keyboard HID	*6-5*
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking	N/A	N/A	Enable	*6-7*
USB Keystroke Delay	N/A	N/A	No Delay	*6-7*
USB CAPS Lock Override	N/A	N/A	Disable	*6-8*
USB Ignore Unknown Characters	N/A	N/A	Enable	*6-8*
USB Convert Unknown to Code 39	N/A	N/A	Disable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad	N/A	N/A	Enable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero	N/A	N/A	Enable	*6-10*
Quick Keypad Emulation	N/A	N/A	Enable	*6-10*
USB FN1 Substitution	N/A	N/A	Disable	*6-11*
Function Key Mapping	N/A	N/A	Disable	*6-11*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Simulated Caps Lock	N/A	N/A	Disable	6-12
Convert Case	N/A	N/A	None	6-12
USB Static CDC	N/A	N/A	Enable	6-13
Ignore Beep Directive	N/A	N/A	Enable (Ignore)	6-14
Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive	N/A	N/A	Enable (Ignore)	6-14
USB Polling Interval	N/A	N/A	3 msec	6-15
USB Fast HID	N/A	N/A	Enable	6-16
IBM Specification Version	N/A	N/A	Version 2.2	6-17
SSI Parameters				
Select SSI Host	N/A	N/A	N/A	7-11
Baud Rate	156	9Ch	9600	7-12
Parity	158	9Eh	None	7-13
Check Parity	151	97h	Disable	7-14
Stop Bits	157	9Dh	1	7-14
Software Handshaking	159	9Fh	ACK/NAK	7-15
Host RTS Line State	154	9Ah	Low	7-16
Decode Data Packet Format	238	EEh	Send Raw Decode Data	7-16
Host Serial Response Time-out	155	9Bh	2 sec	7-16
Host Character Time-out	239	EFh	200 msec	7-18
Multipacket Option	334	F0h 4Eh	Option 1	7-19
Interpacket Delay	335	F0h 4Fh	0 ms	7-20
Decode Event	256	F0h 00h	Disable	7-21
Boot Up Event	258	F0h 02h	Disable	7-22
Parameter Event	259	F0h 03h	Disable	7-22
RS-232 Host Parameters				
RS-232 Host Types	N/A	N/A	Standard	8-6
Baud Rate	N/A	N/A	9600	8-8
Parity Type	N/A	N/A	None	8-9
Stop Bits	N/A	N/A	1 Stop Bit	8-10
Data Bits	N/A	N/A	8-Bit	8-10

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Check Receive Errors	N/A	N/A	Enable	*8-11*
Hardware Handshaking	N/A	N/A	None	*8-11*
Software Handshaking	N/A	N/A	None	*8-13*
Host Serial Response Time-out	N/A	N/A	2 Sec	*8-15*
RTS Line State	N/A	N/A	Low RTS	*8-16*
Beep on <BEL>	N/A	N/A	Disable	*8-16*
Intercharacter Delay	N/A	N/A	0 msec	*8-17*
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options	N/A	N/A	Normal Operation	*8-18*
Ignore Unknown Characters	N/A	N/A	Send Bar Code	*8-18*
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters				
Port Address	N/A	N/A	None Selected	*9-4*
Convert Unknown to Code 39	N/A	N/A	Disable	*9-5*
Ignore Beep Directive	N/A	N/A	Enable (Ignore)	*9-5*
Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive	N/A	N/A	Enable (Ignore)	*9-6*
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters				
Keyboard Wedge Host Type	N/A	N/A	IBM AT Notebook	*10-4*
Ignore Unknown Characters	N/A	N/A	Transmit	*10-4*
Keystroke Delay	N/A	N/A	No Delay	*10-5*
Intra-Keystroke Delay	N/A	N/A	Disable	*10-5*
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation	N/A	N/A	Enable	*10-6*
Quick Keypad Emulation	N/A	N/A	Enable	*10-6*
Simulated Caps Lock	N/A	N/A	Disable	*10-7*
Caps Lock Override	N/A	N/A	Disable	*10-7*
Convert Wedge Case	N/A	N/A	No Convert	*10-8*
Function Key Mapping	N/A	N/A	Disable	*10-8*
FN1 Substitution	N/A	N/A	Disable	*10-9*
Send Make and Break	N/A	N/A	Send	*10-9*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Enable/Disable All Code Types				*11-8*
1D Symbologies				
UPC/EAN				
UPC-A	1	01h	Enable	*11-9*
UPC-E	2	02h	Enable	*11-9*
UPC-E1	12	0Ch	Disable	*11-10*
EAN-8/JAN 8	4	04h	Enable	*11-10*
EAN-13/JAN 13	3	03h	Enable	*11-11*
Bookland EAN	83	53h	Disable	*11-11*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2 and 5 digits)	16	10h	Ignore	*11-12*
User-Programmable Supplementals Supplemental 1: Supplemental 2:	 579 580	 F1h 43h F1h 44h	000	*11-15*
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	80	50h	10	*11-15*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	672	F1h A0h	Combined	*11-16*
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone	1289	F8h 05h 09h	Disable	*11-17*
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	40	28h	Enable	*11-17*
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	41	29h	Enable	*11-18*
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	42	2Ah	Enable	*11-18*
UPC-A Preamble	34	22h	System Character	*11-19*
UPC-E Preamble	35	23h	System Character	*11-20*
UPC-E1 Preamble	36	24h	System Character	*11-21*
Convert UPC-E to A	37	25h	Disable	*11-22*
Convert UPC-E1 to A	38	26h	Disable	*11-22*
EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend	39	27h	Disable	*11-23*
Bookland ISBN Format	576	F1h 40h	ISBN-10	*11-23*
UCC Coupon Extended Code	85	55h	Disable	*11-24*
Coupon Report	730	F1h DAh	New Coupon Format	*11-24*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
ISSN EAN	617	F1h 69h	Disable	*11-25*
Code 128				
Code 128	8	08h	Enable	*11-26*
Set Length(s) for Code 128	209, 210	D1h, D2h	1 to 55	*11-26*
GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)	14	0Eh	Enable	*11-28*
ISBT 128	84	54h	Enable	*11-28*
ISBT Concatenation	577	F1h 41h	Autodiscriminate	*11-29*
Check ISBT Table	578	F1h 42h	Enable	*11-30*
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	223	DFh	10	*11-30*
Code 128 Security Level	751	F1h EFh	Security Level 1	*11-31*
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone	1208	F8h 04h B8h	Disable	*11-32*
Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>	1254	F8h 04h E6h	Disable	*11-32*
Code 39				
Code 39	0	00h	Enable	*11-33*
Trioptic Code 39	13	0Dh	Disable	*11-33*
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	86	56h	Disable	*11-34*
Code 32 Prefix	231	E7h	Disable	*11-34*
Set Length(s) for Code 39	18, 19	12h, 13h	1 to 55	*11-35*
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	48	30h	Disable	*11-36*
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	43	2Bh	Disable	*11-36*
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	17	11h	Disable	*11-37*
Code 39 Security Level	750	F1h EEh	Security Level 1	*11-38*
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone	1209	F8h 04h B9h	Disable	*11-39*
Code 93				
Code 93	9	09h	Enable	*11-40*
Set Length(s) for Code 93	26, 27	1Ah, 1Bh	1 to 55	*11-40*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Code 11				
Code 11	10	0Ah	Disable	*11-42*
Set Lengths for Code 11	28, 29	1Ch, 1Dh	4 to 55	*11-42*
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	52	34h	Disable	*11-44*
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	47	2Fh	Disable	*11-45*
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)				
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	6	06h	Enable	*11-46*
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	22, 23	16h, 17h	6 to 55	*11-46*
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	49	31h	Disable	*11-48*
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	44	2Ch	Disable	*11-49*
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	82	52h	Disable	*11-49*
I 2 of 5 Security Level	1121	F8h 04h 61h	Security Level 1	*11-50*
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone	1210	F8h 04h BAh	Disable	*11-51*
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)				
Discrete 2 of 5	5	05h	Disable	*11-52*
Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5	20, 21	14h 15h	1 to 55	*11-52*
Codabar (NW - 7)				
Codabar	7	07h	Enable	*11-54*
Set Lengths for Codabar	24, 25	18h, 19h	4 to 55	*11-54*
CLSI Editing	54	36h	Disable	*11-56*
NOTIS Editing	55	37h	Disable	*11-56*
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection	855	F2h 57h	Upper Case	*11-57*
MSI				
MSI	11	0Bh	Disable	*11-58*
Set Length(s) for MSI	30, 31	1Eh, 1Fh	4 to 55	*11-58*
MSI Check Digits	50	32h	One	*11-60*
Transmit MSI Check Digit	46	2Eh	Disable	*11-60*
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	51	33h	Mod 10/Mod 10	*11-61*
Chinese 2 of 5				
Chinese 2 of 5	408	F0h 98h	Disable	*11-62*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Matrix 2 of 5				
Matrix 2 of 5	618	F1h 6Ah	Disable	*11-63*
Matrix 2 of 5 Lengths	619 620	F1h 6Bh F1h 6Ch	4 to 55	*11-63*
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	622	F1h 6Eh	Disable	*11-65*
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	623	F1h 6Fh	Disable	*11-65*
Korean 3 of 5				
Korean 3 of 5	581	F1h 45h	Disable	*11-66*
Inverse 1D	586	F1h 4Ah	Regular	*11-67*
GS1 DataBar				
GS1 DataBar-14	338	F0h 52h	Enable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Limited	339	F0h 53h	Enable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Expanded	340	F0h 54h	Enable	*11-69*
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN	397	F0h 8Dh	Disable	*11-69*
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level	728	F1h D8h	Level 3	*11-70*
Composite				
Composite CC-C	341	F0h 55h	Disable	*11-71*
Composite CC-A/B	342	F0h 56h	Disable	*11-71*
Composite TLC-39	371	F0h 73h	Disable	*11-72*
UPC Composite Mode	344	F0h 58h	UPC Never Linked	*11-72*
Composite Beep Mode	398	F0h 8Eh	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	*11-73*
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	427	F0h ABh	Disable	*11-73*
Postal Codes				
US Postnet	89	59h	Disable	*11-74*
US Planet	90	5Ah	Disable	*11-74*
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	95	5Fh	Enable	*11-75*
UK Postal	91	5Bh	Disable	*11-75*
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	96	60h	Enable	*11-76*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Japan Postal	290	F0h 22h	Disable	*11-76*
Australia Post	291	F0h 23h	Disable	*11-77*
Australia Post Format	718	F1h CEh	Autodiscriminate	*11-78*
Netherlands KIX Code	326	F0h 46h	Disable	*11-79*
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	592	F1h 50h	Disable	*11-79*
UPU FICS Postal	611	F1h 63h	Disable	*11-80*
2D Symbologies				
PDF417	15	0Fh	Enable	*11-81*
MicroPDF417	227	E3h	Disable	*11-81*
Code 128 Emulation	123	7Bh	Disable	*11-82*
Data Matrix	292	F0h 24h	Enable	*11-83*
Data Matrix Inverse	588	F1h 4Ch	Inverse Autodetect	*11-83*
Maxicode	294	F0h 26h	Disable	*11-84*
QR Code	293	F0h 25h	Enable	*11-84*
QR Inverse	587	F1h 4Bh	Regular	*11-85*
MicroQR	573	F1h 3Dh	Enable	*11-85*
Aztec	574	F1h 3Eh	Enable	*11-86*
Aztec Inverse	589	F1h 4Dh	Inverse Autodetect	*11-86*
Han Xin	1167	F8h 04h 8Fh	Disable	*11-87*
Han Xin Inverse	1168	F8h 04h 90h	Regular	*11-87*
Symbology-Specific Security Levels				
Redundancy Level	78	4Eh	1	*11-88*
Security Level	77	4Dh	1	*11-90*
1D Quiet Zone Level	1288	F8h 05h 08h	1	*11-91*
Intercharacter Gap Size	381	F0h 7Dh	Normal	*11-92*
Report Version				*11-92*
Macro PDF				
Flush Macro PDF Buffer	N/A	N/A	N/A	*11-93*
Abort Macro PDF Entry	N/A	N/A	N/A	*11-93*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Intelligent Document Capture (IDC)				
IDC Operating Mode	594	F1h 52h	Off	*12-5*
IDC Symbology	655	F1h 8Fh	001	*12-6*
IDC X Coordinate	596	F4h F1h 54h	-151	*12-7*
IDC Y Coordinate	597	F4h F1h 55h	-050	*12-7*
IDC Width	598	F1h 56h	0300	*12-8*
IDC Height	599	F1h 57h	0050	*12-8*
IDC Aspect	595	F1h 53h	000	*12-9*
IDC File Format Selector	601	F1h 59h	JPEG	*12-9*
IDC Bits Per Pixel	602	F1h 5Ah	8 BPP	*12-10*
IDC JPEG Quality	603	F1h 5Bh	065	*12-10*
IDC Find Box Outline	727	F1h D7h	Disable	*12-11*
IDC Minimum Text Length	656	F1h 90h	00	*12-11*
IDC Maximum Text Length	657	F1h 91h	00	*12-12*
IDC Captured Image Brighten	654	F1h 8Eh	Enable	*12-12*
IDC Captured Image Sharpen	658	F1h 92h	Enable	*12-13*
IDC Border Type	829	F2h 3Dh	None	*12-14*
IDC Delay Time	830	F2h 3Eh	000	*12-15*
IDC Zoom Limit	651	F1h 8Bh	000	*12-15*
IDC Maximum Rotation	652	F1h 8Ch	00	*12-16*
OCR Programming Parameters				
OCR-A	680	F1h A8h	Disable	*13-3*
OCR-A Variant	684	F1h ACh	Full ASCII	*13-3*
OCR-B	681	F1h A9h	Disable	*13-5*
OCR-B Variant	685	F1h ADh	Full ASCII	*13-6*
MICR E13B	682	F1h AAh	Disable	*13-9*
US Currency	683	F1h ABh	Disable	*13-10*
OCR Orientation	687	F1h AFh	0º	*13-10*
OCR Lines	691	F1h B3h	1	*13-12*
OCR Minimum Characters	689	F1h B1h	3	*13-12*

Table A-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
OCR Maximum Characters	690	F1h B2h	100	*13-13*
OCR Subset	686	F1h AEh	Selected font variant	*13-13*
OCR Quiet Zone	695	F1h B7h	50	*13-14*
OCR Template	547	F1h 23h	54R	*13-15*
OCR Check Digit Modulus	688	F1h B0h	1	*13-24*
OCR Check Digit Multiplier	700	F1h BCh	121212121212	*13-25*
OCR Check Digit Validation	694	F1h B6h	None	*13-26*
Inverse OCR	856	F2h 58h	Regular	*13-31*
DL Parsing Parameters				
Driver's License Parsing	N/A	N/A	No Driver's License Parsing	*14-2*
Parsing Driver's License Data Fields	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-3*
Driver's License Parse Field Bar Codes	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-4*
AAMVA Parse Field Bar Codes	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-7*
Set Default Parameter	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-17*
Output Gender as M or F	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-17*
Date Format	N/A	N/A	CCYYMMDD	*14-18*
No Separator	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-19*
Send Keystroke Control Characters Keyboard Characters	N/A	N/A	N/A	 *14-20* *14-24*
Parsing Rule Example	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-39*
Embedded Driver's License Parsing ADF Example	N/A	N/A	N/A	*14-43*

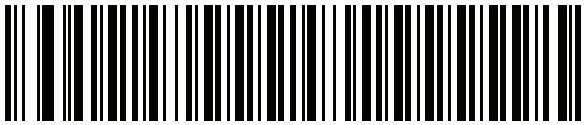
APPENDIX B COUNTRY CODES

Introduction

This chapter provides instructions for programming the keyboard to interface with a USB or keyboard wedge host. The host powers the scanner. For host setup information, see *Chapter 6, USB Interface* and *Chapter 10, Keyboard Wedge Interface*.

To select a code page for the country keyboard type, see *Appendix C, Country Code Pages*.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, default values are indicated with asterisks (*).



*Indicates Default — ***US English (North American)** — Feature/Option

USB and Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes)

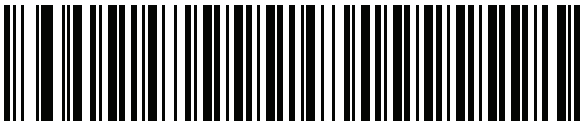
Scan the bar code corresponding to the keyboard type. For a USB host, this setting applies only to the USB Keyboard (HID) device. If the keyboard type is not listed, see *Emulate Keypad on page 6-9* for the USB HID host. For a keyboard wedge host, see *Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation on page 10-6*.

NOTE When changing USB country keyboard types the digital scanner automatically resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.

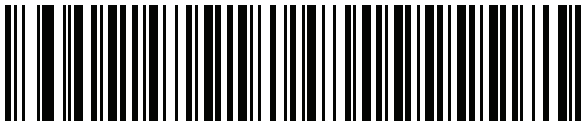
NOTE For best results when using international keyboards, enable *Quick Keypad Emulation on page 6-10*.

IMPORTANT 1. Some country keyboard bar code types are specific to certain Windows Operating Systems (i.e., XP, and Win 7 or higher). Bar codes requiring a specific Windows OS are noted so in their bar code captions.

2. Use the **French International** bar code for Belgian French keyboards.

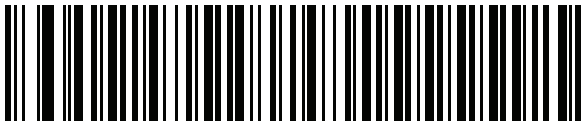


***US English (North American)**

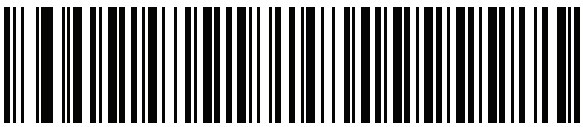


US English (Mac)

Albanian

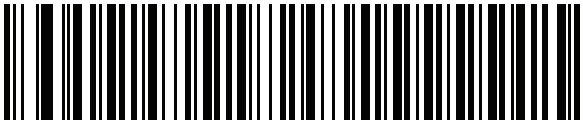


Arabic (101)

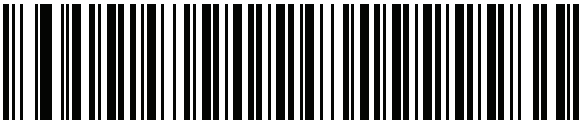


Arabic (102)

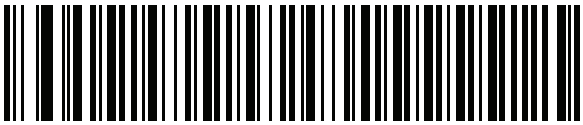
Country Codes (Continued)



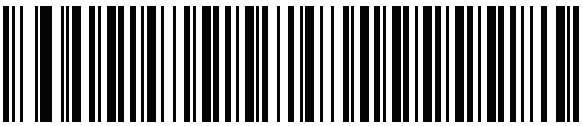
Arabic (102) AZERTY



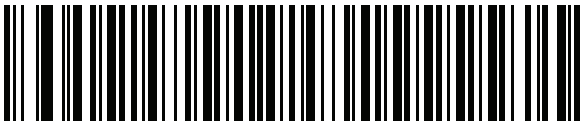
Azeri (Latin)



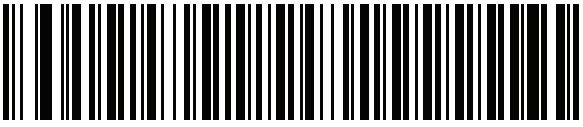
Azeri (Cyrillic)



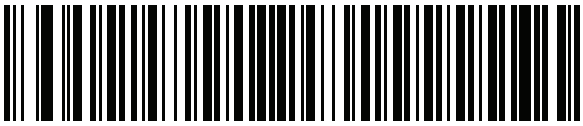
Belarusian



Bosnian (Latin)

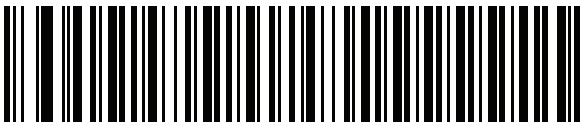


Bosnian (Cyrillic)

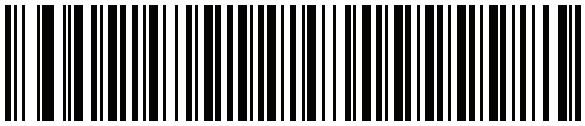


Bulgarian (Latin)

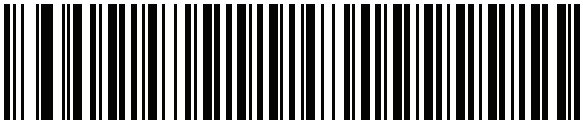
Country Codes (Continued)



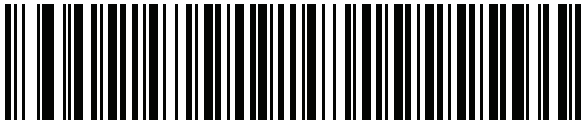
Bulgarian Cyrillic (Typewriter)
(Bulgarian -Windows XP
Typewriter - Win 7 or higher)



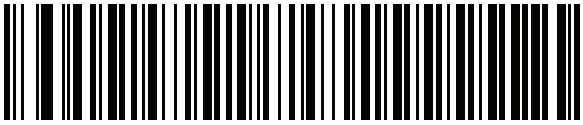
Canadian French Win7



Canadian French (Legacy)

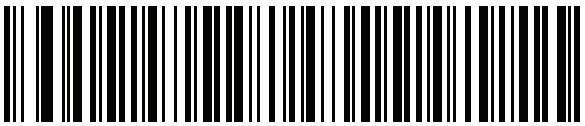


Canadian Multilingual Standard

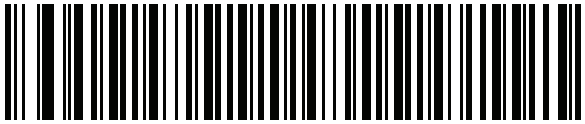


Chinese (ASCII)

Country Codes (Continued)

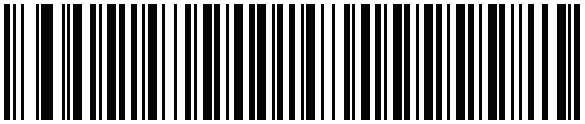


Chinese (Simplified)*

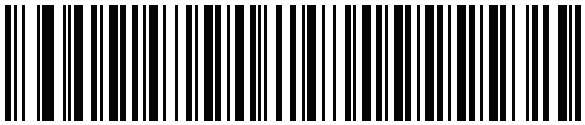


Chinese (Traditional)*

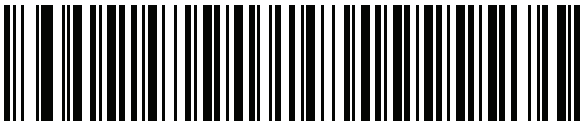
*For CJK keyboard types, see *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control*.



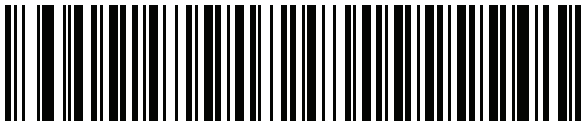
Croatian



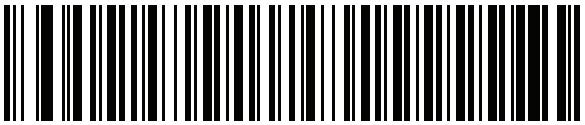
Czech



Czech (Programmer)

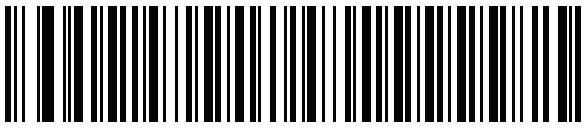


Czech (QWERTY)

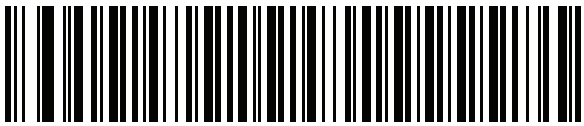


Danish

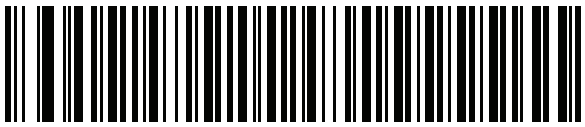
Country Codes (Continued)



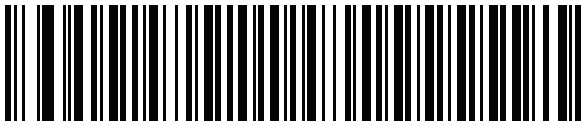
Dutch (Netherlands)



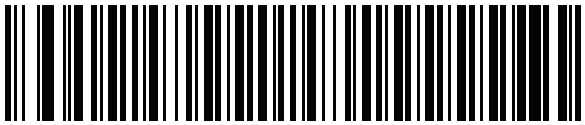
Estonian



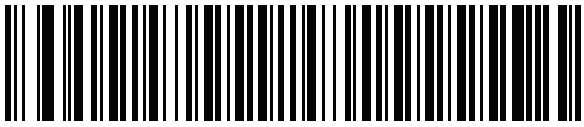
Faeroese



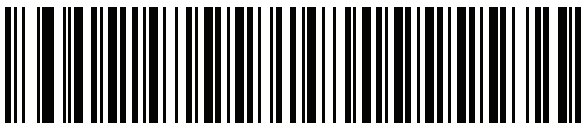
Finnish



French (France)

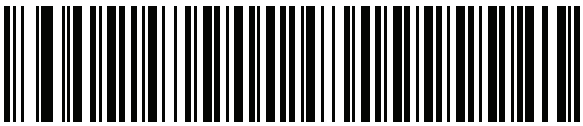


French International (Belgian French)



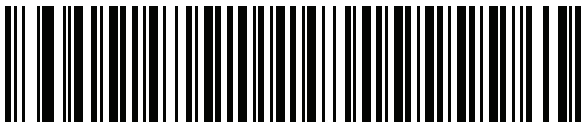
French (Canada) 95/98

Country Codes (Continued)

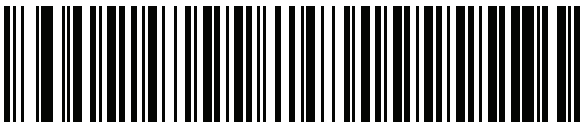


French (Canada) 2000/XP*

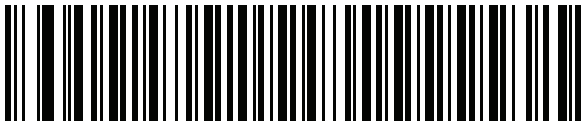
*Note that there is also a country code bar code for *Canadian Multilingual Standard on page B-4*. Be sure to select the appropriate bar code for your host system.



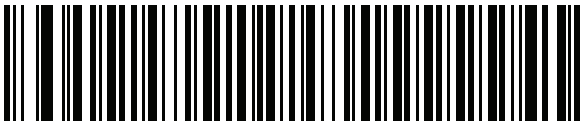
Galician



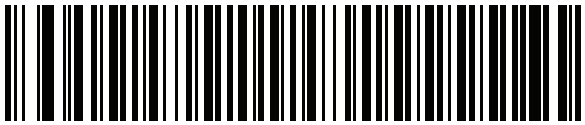
German



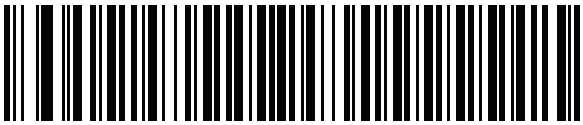
Greek Latin



Greek (220) Latin

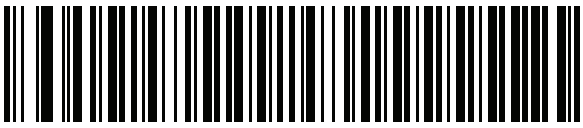


Greek (319) Latin

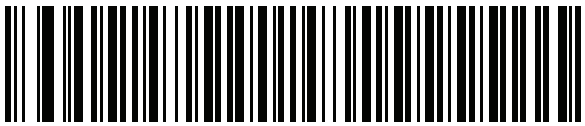


Greek

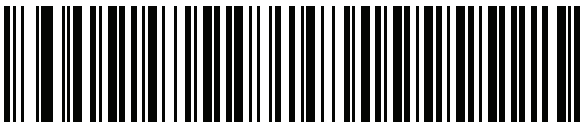
Country Codes (Continued)



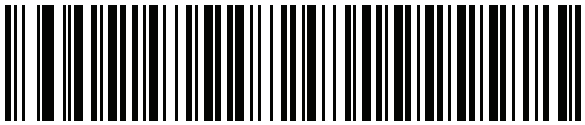
Greek (220)



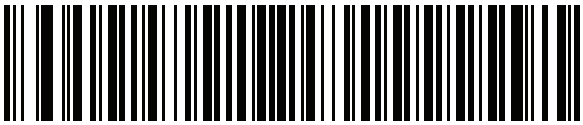
Greek (319)



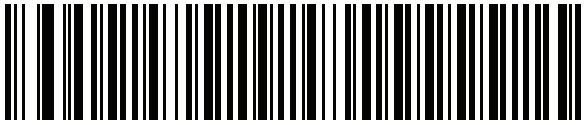
Greek Polytonic



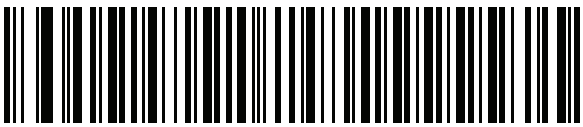
Hebrew Israel



Hungarian

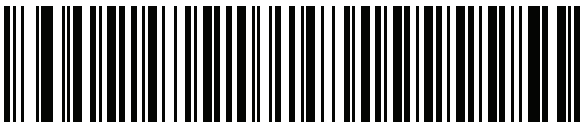


Hungarian_101KEY

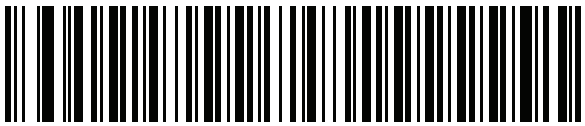


Icelandic

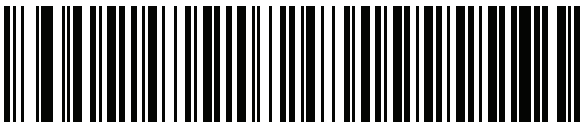
Country Codes (Continued)



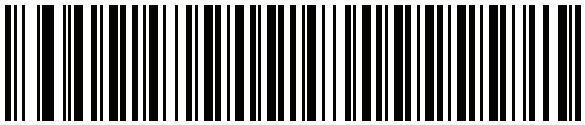
Irish



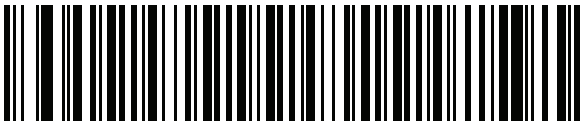
Italian



Italian (142)

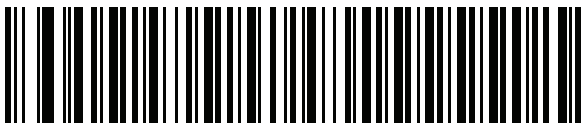


Japanese (ASCII)

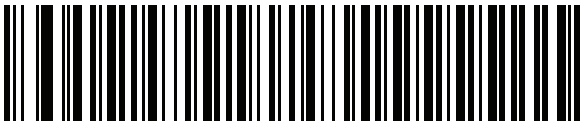


Japanese (SHIFT-JIS)*

*For CJK keyboard types, see *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control*.

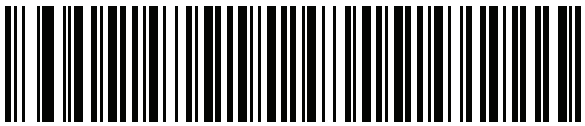


Kazakh



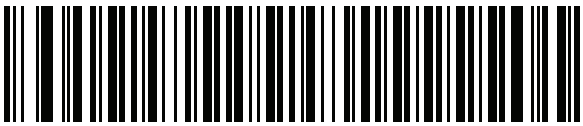
Korean (ASCII)

Country Codes (Continued)

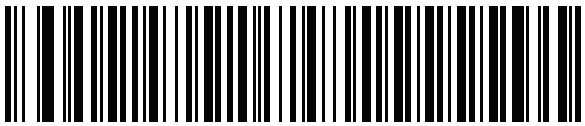


Korean (Hangul)*

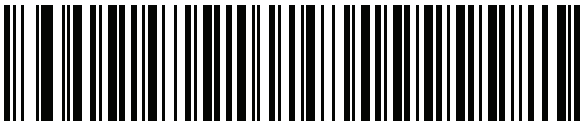
*For CJK keyboard types, see *Appendix D, CJK Decode Control*.



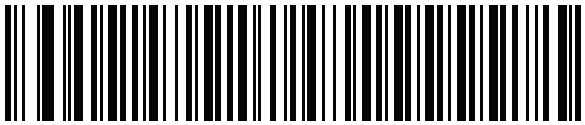
Kyrgyz



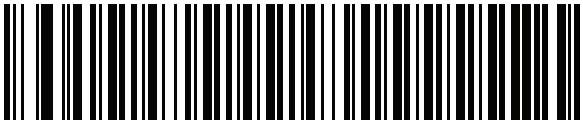
Latin American



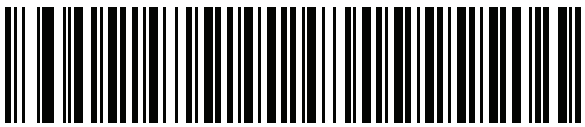
Latvian



Latvian (QWERTY)

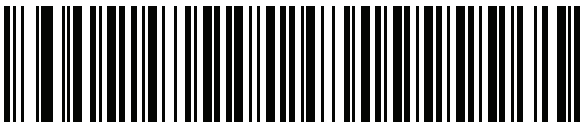


Lithuanian

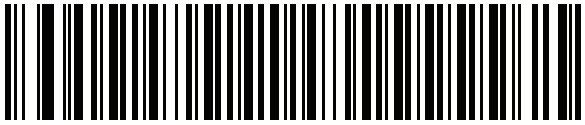


Lithuanian (IBM)

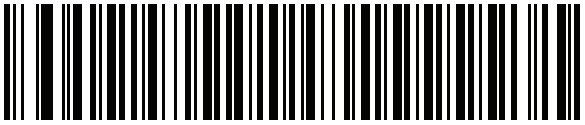
Country Codes (Continued)



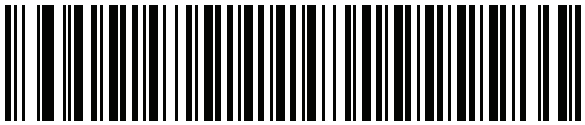
Macedonian (FYROM)



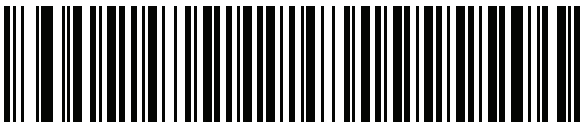
Maltese_47KEY



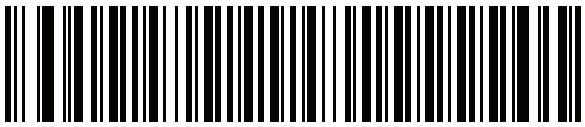
Mongolian



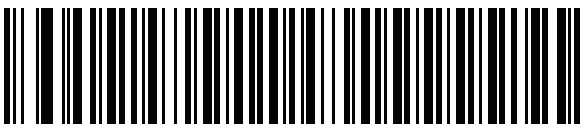
Norwegian



Polish (214)

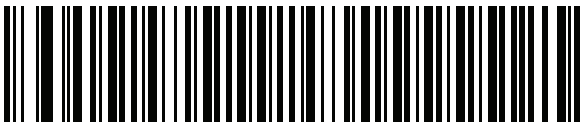


Polish (Programmer)

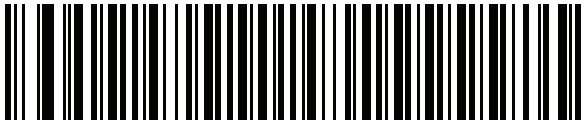


Portuguese (Brazil)
(Windows XP)

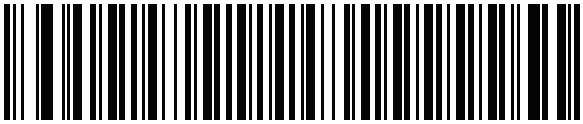
Country Codes (Continued)



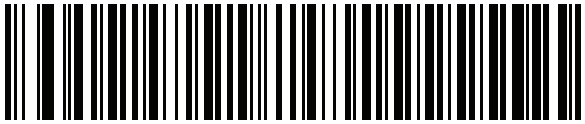
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT)



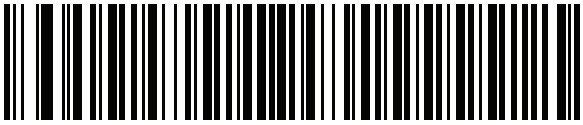
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT2)



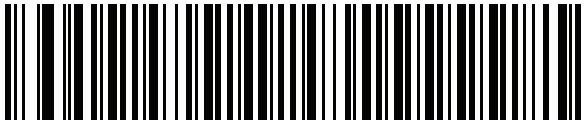
Portuguese (Portugal)



Romanian
(Windows XP)

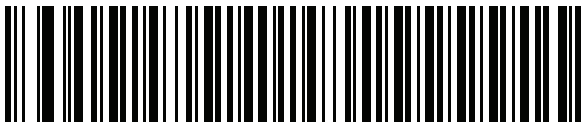


Romanian (Legacy)
(Win 7 or higher)

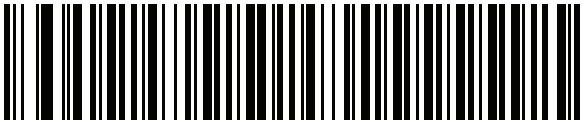


Romanian (Standard)
(Win 7 or higher)

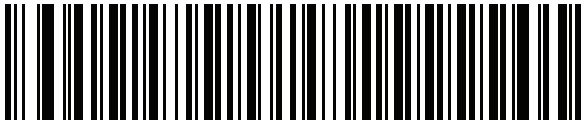
Country Codes (Continued)



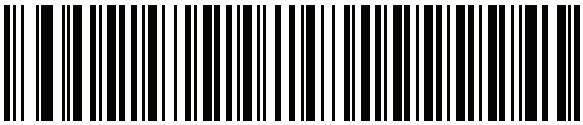
Romanian (Programmer)
(Win 7 or higher)



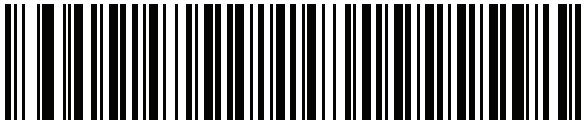
Russian



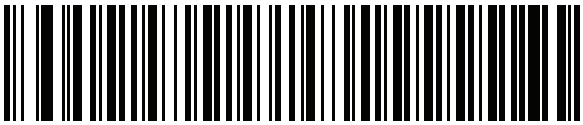
Russian (Typewriter)



Serbian (Latin)

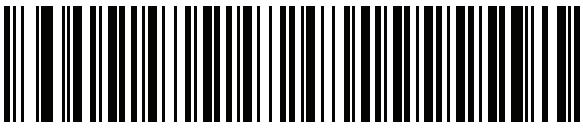


Serbian (Cyrillic)

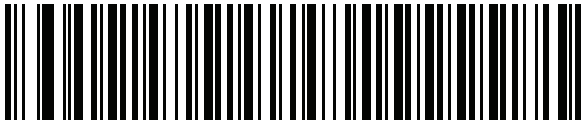


Slovak

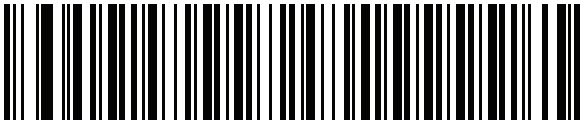
Country Codes (Continued)



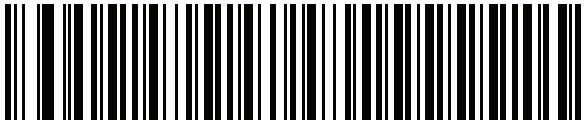
Slovak (QWERTY)



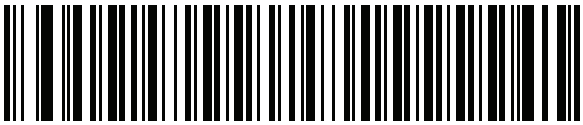
Slovenian



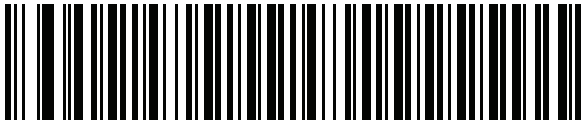
Spanish



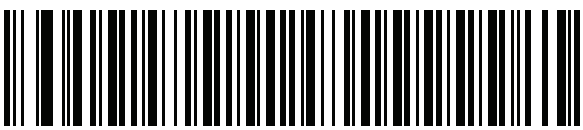
Spanish (Variation)



Swedish

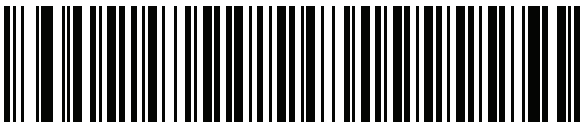


Swiss French

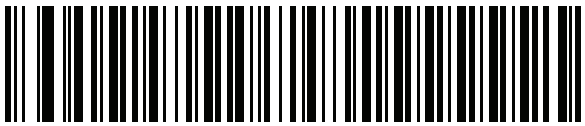


Swiss German

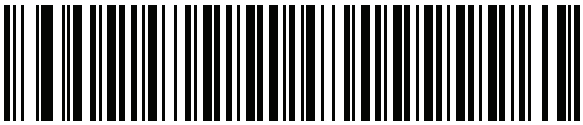
Country Codes (Continued)



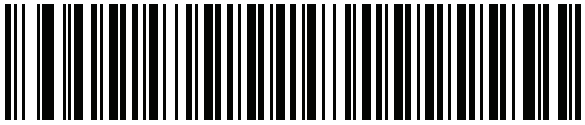
Tatar



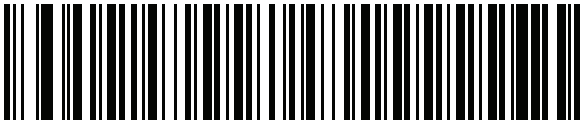
Thai (Kedmanee)



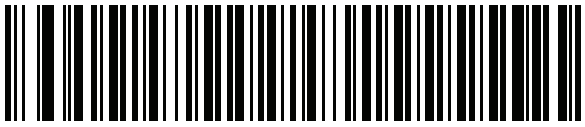
Turkish F



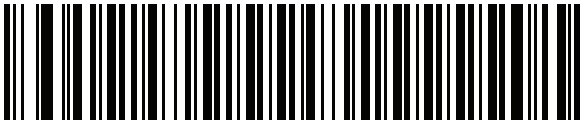
Turkish Q



UK English

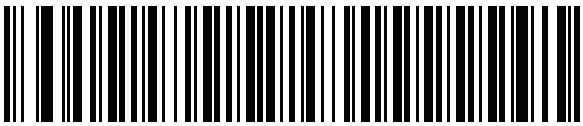


Ukrainian

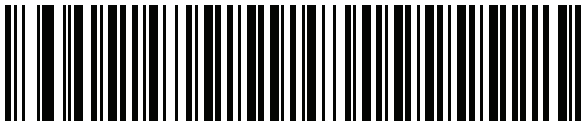


US Dvorak

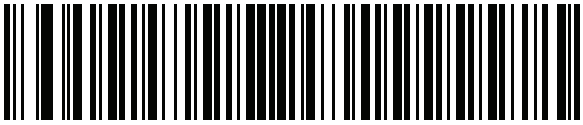
Country Codes (Continued)



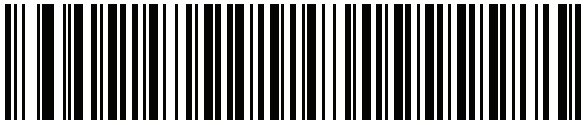
US Dvorak Left



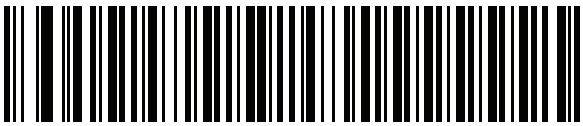
US Dvorak Right



US International



Uzbek



Vietnamese

APPENDIX C COUNTRY CODE PAGES

Introduction

This chapter provides bar codes for selecting code pages for the country keyboard type selected in *Appendix B, Country Codes*. If the default code page in *Table C-1* is appropriate for your selected country keyboard type, you do not need to scan a country code page bar code.

✓ ***NOTE*** ADF rules can also specify a code page based on the symbology and other ADF criteria. Refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*.

Country Code Page Defaults

Table C-1 lists the code page default for each country keyboard.

Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
US English (North American)	Windows 1252
US English (Mac)	Mac CP10000
Albanian	Windows 1250
Arabic 101	Windows 1256
Arabic 102	Windows 1256
Arabic 102 AZERTY	Windows 1256
Azeri Latin	Windows 1254
Azeri Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Belarusian	Windows 1251
Bosnian Latin	Windows 1250

Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
Bosnian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Bulgarian Latin	Windows 1250
Bulgarian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Canadian French Win7	Windows 1252
Canadian French (Legacy)	Windows 1252
Canadian Multilingual	Windows 1252
Croatian	Windows 1250
Chinese ASCII	Windows 1252
Chinese (Simplified)	Windows 936, GBK
Chinese (Traditional)	Windows 950, Big5
Czech	Windows 1250
Czech Programmers	Windows 1250
Czech QWERTY	Windows 1250
Danish	Windows 1252
Dutch Netherland	Windows 1252
Estonian	Windows 1257
Faeroese	Windows 1252
Finnish	Windows 1252
French (France)	Windows 1252
French (Canada) 95/98	Windows 1252
French (Canada) 2000/XP	Windows 1252
French International (Belgian French)	Windows 1252
Galician	Windows 1252
German	Windows 1252
Greek Latin	Windows 1252
Greek220 Latin	Windows 1253
Greek319 Latin	Windows 1252
Greek	Windows 1253
Greek220	Windows 1253
Greek319	Windows 1253
Greek Polytonic	Windows 1253

Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
Hebrew Israel	Windows 1255
Hungarian	Windows 1250
Hungarian_101KEY	Windows 1250
Icelandic	Windows 1252
Irish	Windows 1252
Italian	Windows 1252
Italian_142	Windows 1252
Japanese ASCII	Windows 1252
Japanese (Shift-JIS)	Windows 932, Shift-JIS
Kazakh	Windows 1251
Korean ASCII	Windows 1252
Korean (Hangul)	Windows 949, Hangul
Kyrgyz Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Latin America	Windows 1252
Latvian	Windows 1257
Latvian QWERTY	Windows 1257
Lithuanian	Windows 1257
Lithuanian_IBM	Windows 1257
Macedonian -FYROM	Windows 1251
Maltese_47KEY	Windows 1252
Mongolian-Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Norwegian	Windows 1252
Polish_214	Windows 1250
Polish Programmer	Windows 1250
Portuguese Brazil	Windows 1252
Portuguese Brazilian ABNT	Windows 1252
Portuguese Brazilian ABNT2	Windows 1252
Portuguese Portugal	Windows 1252
Romanian	Windows 1250
Romanian Legacy	Windows 1250
Romanian Standard	Windows 1250

Table C-1 *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
Romanian Programmer	Windows 1250
Russian	Windows 1251
Russian Typewriter	Windows 1251
Serbian Latin	Windows 1250
Serbian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Slovak	Windows 1250
Slovak QWERTY	Windows 1250
Slovenian	Windows 1250
Spanish	Windows 1252
Spanish Variation	Windows 1252
Swedish	Windows 1252
Swiss French	Windows 1252
Swiss German	Windows 1252
Tatar	Windows 1251
Thai-Kedmanee	Windows 874
Turkish F	Windows 1254
Turkish Q	Windows 1254
Ukrainian	Windows 1251
United Kingdom	Windows 1252
United States	Windows 1252
US Dvorak	Windows 1252
US Dvorak Left Hand	Windows 1252
US Dvorak Right Hand	Windows 1252
US International	Windows 1252
Uzbek Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Vietnamese	Windows 1258

Country Code Page Bar Codes

Scan the bar code corresponding to the country keyboard code page.

Windows 1250
Latin 2, Central European

Windows 1251
Cyrillic, Slavic

Windows 1252
Latin 1, Western European

Windows 1253
Greek

Windows 1254
Latin 5, Turkish

Country Code Pages (Continued)

Windows 1255
Hebrew

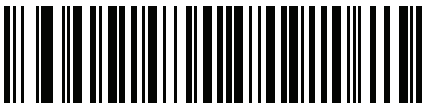
Windows 1256
Arabic

Windows 1257
Baltic

Windows 1258
Vietnamese

Windows 874
Thai

Country Code Pages (Continued)



Windows 20866
Cyrillic KOI8-R

Windows 932
Japanese Shift-JIS

Windows 936
Simplified Chinese GBK

Windows 54936
Simplified Chinese GB18030

Windows 949
Korean Hangul

Windows 950
Traditional Chinese Big5

Country Code Pages (Continued)

MS-DOS 437
Latin US

MS-DOS 737
Greek

MS-DOS 775
Baltic

MS-DOS 850
Latin 1

MS-DOS 852
Latin 2

Country Code Pages (Continued)

MS-DOS 855
Cyrillic

MS-DOS 857
Turkish

MS-DOS 860
Portuguese

MS-DOS 861
Icelandic

MS-DOS 862
Hebrew

Country Code Pages (Continued)

MS-DOS 863
French Canada

MS-DOS 865
Nordic

MS-DOS 866
Cyrillic

MS-DOS 869
Greek 2

Country Code Pages (Continued)

ISO 8859-1
Latin 1, Western European

ISO 8859-2
Latin 2, Central European

ISO 8859-3
Latin 3, South European

ISO 8859-4
Latin 4, North European

ISO 8859-5
Cyrillic

Country Code Pages (Continued)

ISO 8859-6
Arabic

ISO 8859-7
Greek

ISO 8859-8
Hebrew

ISO 8859-9
Latin 5, Turkish

ISO 8859-10
Latin 6, Nordic

Country Code Pages (Continued)

ISO 8859-11
Thai

ISO 8859-13
Latin 7, Baltic

ISO 8859-14
Latin 8, Celtic

ISO 8859-15
Latin 9

ISO 8859-16
Latin 10, South-Eastern European

Country Code Pages (Continued)

UTF-8

UTF-16LE
UTF-16 Little Endian

UTF-16BE
UTF-16 Big Endian

Mac CP10000
Roman

APPENDIX D CJK DECODE CONTROL

Introduction

This appendix describes control parameters for CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) bar code decode through USB HID Keyboard Emulation mode.

NOTE Because ADF does not support CJK character processing, there is no format manipulation for CJK output.

CJK Control Parameters

Unicode Output Control

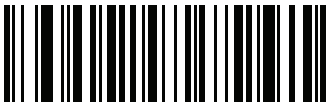
Parameter # 973

For a Unicode encoded CJK bar code, select one of the following options for unicode output:

- **Universal Output to Unicode and MBCS Application** - This default method applies to Unicode and MBCS expected applications, such as MS Word and Notepad on a Windows host.

NOTE To support Unicode universal output, set up the registry table for the Windows host. See *Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7*.

- **Output to Unicode Application Only** - This method applies only to Unicode expected applications, such as MS Word and WordPad, but not Notepad.



***Universal Output (0)**

Unicode Application Only (1)

CJK Output Method to Windows Host

Parameter # 972

For a national standard encoded CJK bar code, select one of the following options for CJK output to a Windows host:

- **Universal CJK Output** - This is the default universal CJK output method for US English IME or Chinese/Japanese/Korean ASCII IME on a Windows host. This method converts CJK characters to Unicode and emulates the characters when transmitting to the host. Use the *Unicode Output Control* parameter to control Unicode output.

> ***NOTE*** To support universal CJK output, set up the registry table for the Windows host. See *Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7*.

- **Other options for CJK output** - With the following methods, the scanner sends the CJK character hexadecimal internal code (Nei Ma) value to host, or converts the CJK character to Unicode and sends the hexadecimal Unicode value to host. When using these methods, the Windows host must select the corresponding IME to accept the CJK character. See *Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7*.
  - **Japanese Unicode Output**
  - **Simplified Chinese GBK Code Output**
  - **Simplified Chinese Unicode Output**
  - **Korean Unicode Code Output**
  - **Traditional Chinese Big5 Code Output** (Windows XP)
  - **Traditional Chinese Big5 Code Output** (Windows 7)
  - **Traditional Chinese Unicode Code Output** (Windows XP)
  - **Traditional Chinese Unicode Code Output** (Windows 7)

> ***NOTE*** The Unicode emulate output method depends on the host system (Windows XP or Windows 7).

***Universal CJK Output**
(0)

Japanese Unicode Output
(34)

(for Japanese Unicode Output, select Simplified Chinese Unicode IME on the Windows host)

CJK Output Method to Windows Host (continued

Chinese (Simplified) GBK Output (1)

Chinese (Simplified) Unicode Output (2)

Korean Unicode Output (50)

(for Korean Unicode Output, select Simplified Chinese Unicode IME on the Windows host)

Chinese (Traditional) Big5 Output (Windows XP) (17)

Chinese (Traditional) Big5 Output (Windows 7) (19)

Chinese (Traditional) Unicode Output (Windows XP) (18)

Chinese (Traditional) Unicode Output (Windows 7) (20)

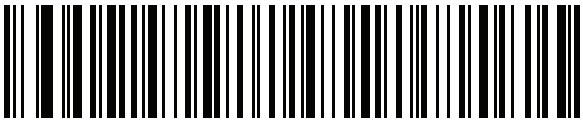
Non-CJK UTF Bar Code Output

Parameter # 960

Some country keyboard type layouts contain characters that do not exist in the default code page (see *Country Keyboard Type Missing Characters on page D-6*). Although the default code page can not encode these characters in a bar code, they can be encoded in the UTF-8 bar code. Scan this parameter bar code to output the Unicode values by emulation mode.

✓ ***NOTE*** Use this special country keyboard type to decode the non-CJK UTF-8 bar code. After decoding, re-configure the scanner to use the original country keyboard type.

Use US English IME on Windows. See *Unicode Output Control on page D-2*.



Non-CJK UTF-8 Emulation Output

Country Keyboard Type Missing Characters

Country keyboard type: **Tatar, Uzbek, Mongolian, Kyrgyz, Kazakh and Azeri**
Default code page: CP1251
Missing characters:

ғ	Ғ
ҳ	Ҳ
қ	Қ
h	Һ
ө	Ө
ә	Ә
ү	Ү
ң	Ң
ж	Ж
₮	
ң	Ң
ұ	Ұ
к	К
ч	Ч
к	К

Country keyboard type: **Romanian (Standard)**
Default code page: CP1250
Missing characters:

ș	Ș
ț	Ț

Country keyboard type: **Portuguese-Brazilian (ABNT), Portuguese-Brazilian (ABNT2)**
Default code page: CP1252
Missing character: ₢

Country keyboard type: **Azeri-Latin**
Default code page: CP1254
Missing characters: ə, Ə

Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host

This section describes how to set up CJK decode with a Windows host.

Setting Up the Windows Registry Table for Unicode Universal Output

To support the Unicode universal output method, set up the Windows host registry table as follows:

1. Select **Start > Run > regedt32** to start the registry editor.
2. Under **HKEY_Current_User\Control Panel\Input Method**, set **EnableHexNumpad** to **1** as follows:
   [HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Control Panel\Input Method]
   "EnableHexNumpad"="1"
   If this key does not exist, add it as type **REG_SZ** (string value).
3. Reboot the computer to implement the registry change.

Adding CJK IME on Windows

To add the desired CJK input language:

1. Click **Start > Control Panel**.
2. If the Control Panel opens in category view, select **Switch to Classic View** in the top left corner.
3. Select **Regional and Language Options**.
4. Click the **Language** tab.
5. Under **Supplemental Language Support**, select the **Install Files for East Asian Languages** check box if not already selected, and click **Apply**. This may require a Windows installation CD to install the required files. This step ensures that the East Asian Languages (CJK) are available.
6. Under **Text Services and Input Language**, click **Details**.
7. Under **Installed Services**, click **Add**.
8. In the **Add Input Language** dialog box, choose the CJK input language and keyboard layout or Input Method Editor (IME) to add.
9. Click **OK** twice. The language indicator appears in the system tray (at bottom right corner of the desktop by default). To switch between input languages (keyboard languages) select the language indicator in the system tray.
10. Select the language indicator in the system tray to select the desired country keyboard type.
11. Verify that the characters displayed on each country's keyboard appear.

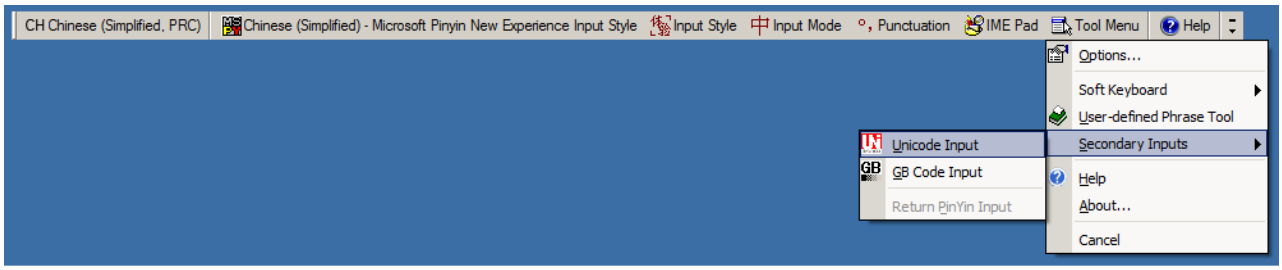
Selecting the Simplified Chinese Input Method on the Host

To select the Simplified Chinese input method:

- Select Unicode/GBK input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Simplified) - NeiMa**, then click the input bar to select **Unicode** or **GBK NeiMa** input.

Or

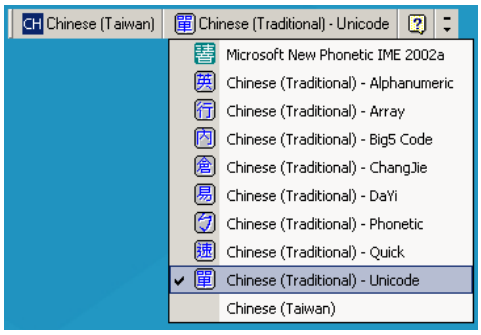
- Select Unicode/GBK input on Windows7: **Chinese (Simplified) - Microsoft Pinyin New Experience Input Style**, then select **Tool Menu > Secondary Inputs > Unicode Input** or **GB Code Input**.



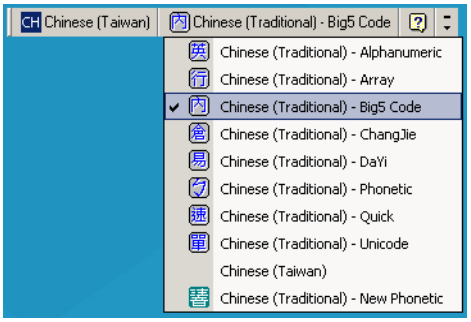
Selecting the Traditional Chinese Input Method on the Host

To select the Traditional Chinese input method:

- Select Unicode input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Traditional) - Unicode**



- Select Big5 input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Traditional) - Big5 Code**



- Select Unicode/Big5 input on Windows 7: **Chinese (Traditional) - New Quick**. This option support both Unicode and Big5 input.

APPENDIX E PROGRAMMING REFERENCE

Symbol Code Identifiers

Table E-1 *Symbol Code Characters*

Code Character	Code Type
A	UPC-A, UPC-E, UPC-E1, EAN-8, EAN-13
B	Code 39, Code 32
C	Codabar
D	Code 128, ISBT 128, ISBT 128 Concatenated
E	Code 93
F	Interleaved 2 of 5
G	Discrete 2 of 5, or Discrete 2 of 5 IATA
H	Code 11
J	MSI
K	GS1-128
L	Bookland EAN
M	Trioptic Code 39
N	Coupon Code
R	GS1 DataBar Family
S	Matrix 2 of 5
T	UCC Composite, TLC 39
U	Chinese 2 of 5

Table E-1 *Symbol Code Characters (Continued)*

Code Character	Code Type
V	Korean 3 of 5
X	ISSN EAN, PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
P00	Data Matrix
P01	QR Code, MicroQR
P02	Maxicode
P03	US Postnet
P04	US Planet
P05	Japan Postal
P06	UK Postal
P08	Netherlands KIX Code
P09	Australia Post
P0A	USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail
P0B	UPU FICS Postal
P0X	Signature Capture

AIM Code Identifiers

Each AIM Code Identifier contains the three-character string **]cm** where:

] = Flag Character (ASCII 93)
c = Code Character (see *Table E-2*)
m = Modifier Character (see *Table E-3*)

Table E-2 *Aim Code Characters*

Code Character	Code Type
A	Code 39, Code 39 Full ASCII, Code 32
C	Code 128, ISBT 128, ISBT 128 Concatenated, GS1-128, Coupon (Code 128 portion)
d	Data Matrix
E	UPC/EAN, Coupon (UPC portion)
e	GS1 DataBar Family
F	Codabar
G	Code 93
H	Code 11
I	Interleaved 2 of 5
L	PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
L2	TLC 39
M	MSI
Q	QR Code, MicroQR
S	Discrete 2 of 5, IATA 2 of 5
U	Maxicode
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
X	Bookland EAN, ISSN EAN, Trioptic Code 39, Chinese 2 of 5, Matrix 2 of 5, Korean 3 of 5, US Postnet, US Planet, UK Postal, Japan Postal, Australia Post, Netherlands KIX Code, USPS 4CB/One Code/ Intelligent Mail, UPU FICS Postal, Signature Capture

The modifier character is the sum of the applicable option values based on *Table E-3*.

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
Code 39	0	No check character or Full ASCII processing.
	1	Reader has checked one check character.
	3	Reader has checked and stripped check character.
	4	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion.
	5	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked one check character.
	7	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked and stripped check character.
	Example: A Full ASCII bar code with check character W, **A+I+MI+DW**, is transmitted as **]A7**AIMID where 7 = (3+4).	
Trioptic Code 39	0	No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Trioptic bar code 412356 is transmitted as **]X0**412356	
Code 128	0	Standard data packet, no Function code 1 in first symbol position.
	1	Function code 1 in first symbol character position.
	2	Function code 1 in second symbol character position.
	Example: A Code (EAN) 128 bar code with Function 1 character FNC1 in the first position, AIMID is transmitted as **]C1**AIMID	
I 2 of 5	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has validated check digit.
	3	Reader has validated and stripped check digit.
	Example: An I 2 of 5 bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as **]I0**4123	
Codabar	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has checked check digit.
	3	Reader has stripped check digit before transmission.
	Example: A Codabar bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as **]F0**4123	
Code 93	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Code 93 bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as **]G0**012345678905	
MSI	0	Check digits are sent.
	1	No check digit is sent.
	Example: An MSI bar code 4123, with a single check digit checked, is transmitted as **]M1**4123	

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
D 2 of 5	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A D 2 of 5 bar code 4123, is transmitted as **]S0**4123	
UPC/EAN	0	Standard data packet in full EAN format, i.e. 13 digits for UPC-A, UPC-E, and EAN-13 (not including supplemental data).
	1	Two digit supplemental data only.
	2	Five digit supplemental data only.
	3	Combined data packet comprising 13 digits from EAN-13, UPC-A or UPC-E symbol and 2 or 5 digits from supplemental symbol.
	4	EAN-8 data packet.
	Example: A UPC-A bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as **]E0**0012345678905	
Bookland EAN	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Bookland EAN bar code 123456789X is transmitted as **]X0**123456789X	
ISSN EAN	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: An ISSN EAN bar code 123456789X is transmitted as **]X0**123456789X	
Code 11	0	Single check digit
	1	Two check digits
	3	Check characters validated but not transmitted.
GS1 DataBar Family		No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0. GS1 DataBar-14 and GS1 DataBar Limited transmit with an Application Identifier “01”. Note: In GS1-128 emulation mode, GS1 DataBar is transmitted using Code 128 rules (i.e.,]C1).
	Example: A GS1 DataBar-14 bar code 0110012345678902 is transmitted as **]e**00110012345678902.	
EAN.UCC Composites (GS1 DataBar, GS1-128, 2D portion of UPC composite)		Native mode transmission. Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	0	Standard data packet.
	1	Data packet containing the data following an encoded symbol separator character.
	2	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet does not support the ECI protocol.
	3	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet supports the ECI protocol.
		GS1-128 emulation Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	1	Data packet is a GS1-128 symbol (i.e., data is preceded with]JC1).

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
PDF417, Micro PDF417	0	Reader set to conform to protocol defined in 1994 PDF417 symbology specifications. **Note:** When this option is transmitted, the receiver cannot reliably determine whether ECIs have been invoked or whether data byte 92_{DEC} has been doubled in transmission.
	1	Reader set to follow the ECI protocol (Extended Channel Interpretation). All data characters 92_{DEC} are doubled.
	2	Reader set for Basic Channel operation (no escape character transmission protocol). Data characters 92_{DEC} are not doubled. **Note:** When decoders are set to this mode, unbuffered Macro symbols and symbols requiring the decoder to convey ECI escape sequences cannot be transmitted.
	3	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is 903-907, 912, 914, 915.
	4	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 908-909.
	5	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 910-911.
	Example: A PDF417 bar code ABCD, with no transmission protocol enabled, is transmitted as]L2ABCD.	
Data Matrix	0	ECC 000-140, not supported.
	1	ECC 200.
	2	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position.
	3	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position.
	4	ECC 200, ECI protocol implemented.
	5	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position, ECI protocol implemented.
	6	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position, ECI protocol implemented.
MaxiCode	0	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5.
	1	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3.
	2	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3, ECI protocol implemented in secondary message.

Table E-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
QR Code	0	Model 1 symbol.
	1	Model 2 / MicroQR symbol, ECI protocol not implemented.
	2	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	4	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	5	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
	6	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
Aztec	0	Aztec symbol.
	C	Aztec Rune symbol.

APPENDIX F SAMPLE BAR CODES

Code 39

UPC/EAN

UPC-A, 100%

EAN-13, 100%

Code 128

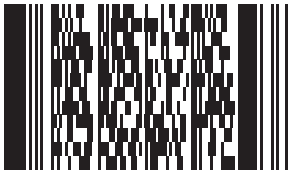
Interleaved 2 of 5

GS1 DataBar-14

NOTE DataBar-14 must be enabled to read the bar code below (see *GS1 DataBar-14 on page 11-68*).

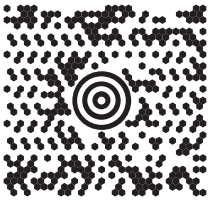
7612341562341

PDF417



Data Matrix

Maxicode



QR Code

US Postnet

UK Postal

APPENDIX G NUMERIC BAR CODES

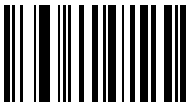
Numeric Bar Codes

For parameters requiring specific numeric values, scan the appropriately numbered bar code(s).

0

1

2



3

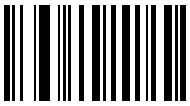
4

Numeric Bar Codes (continued)

5

6

7



8

9

Cancel

To correct an error or change a selection, scan the bar code below.

Cancel

APPENDIX H ASCII CHARACTER SETS

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1000	%U	CTRL 2
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/o	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	‘
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	I
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table H-2 *ALT Key Standard Default Tables*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2064	ALT 2
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table H-3 *USB GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table H-3 *USB GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table H-4 *PF Key Standard Default Table*

PF Keys	Keystroke
4001	PF 1
4002	PF 2
4003	PF 3
4004	PF 4
4005	PF 5
4006	PF 6
4007	PF 7
4008	PF 8
4009	PF 9
4010	PF 10
4011	PF 11
4012	PF 12
4013	PF 13
4014	PF 14
4015	PF 15
4016	PF 16

Table H-5 *F key Standard Default Table*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F 1
5002	F 2
5003	F 3
5004	F 4
5005	F 5
5006	F 6
5007	F 7
5008	F 8
5009	F 9
5010	F 10
5011	F 11
5012	F 12
5013	F 13
5014	F 14
5015	F 15
5016	F 16
5017	F 17
5018	F 18
5019	F 19
5020	F 20
5021	F 21
5022	F 22
5023	F 23
5024	F 24

Table H-6 *Numeric Key Standard Default Table*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	Undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table H-7 *Extended Keypad Standard Default Table*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	Pg Up
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Dn Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

APPENDIX I SIGNATURE CAPTURE CODE

Introduction

CapCode, a signature capture code, is a special pattern that encloses a signature area on a document and allows a scanner to capture a signature.

There are several accepted patterns that allow automatic identification of different signatures on the same form. For example, on the federal tax return 1040 form there are three signature areas, one each for two joint filers, and one for a professional preparer. By using different patterns, a program can correctly identify all three, so they can be captured in any sequence and still be identified correctly.

Code Structure

Signature Capture Area

A CapCode is printed as two identical patterns on either side of a signature capture box, as shown in *Figure I-1*. Each pattern extends the full height of the signature capture box.

The box is optional, so you can omit it, replace it with a single baseline, or print a baseline with an "X" on top of it towards the left, as is customarily done in the US to indicate a request for signature. However, if an "X" or other markings are added in the signature box area, these are captured with the signature.

Figure I-1 *CapCode*

CapCode Pattern Structure

A CapCode pattern structure consists of a start pattern followed by a separator space, a signature capture box, a second separator space, and then a stop pattern. Assuming that X is the dimension of the thinnest element, the start and stop patterns each contains 9X total width in 4 bars and 3 spaces. A 7X quiet zone is required to the left and to the right of the CapCode pattern.

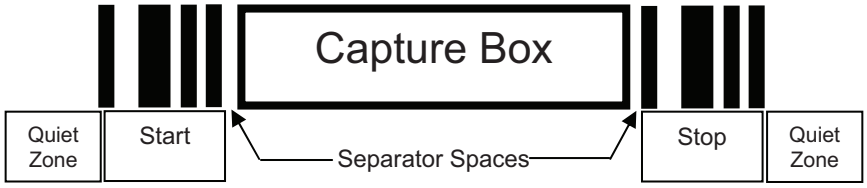


Figure I-2 *CapCode Structure*

The separator spaces on either side of the signature capture box can be between 1X and 3X wide.

Start / Stop Patterns

Table I-1 lists the accepted start / stop patterns. The bar and space widths are expressed as multiples of X. You must use the same pattern on either side of a signature capture box. The type value is reported with the captured signature to indicate the purpose of the signature captured.

Table I-1 *Start / Stop Pattern Definitions*

Bar/Space Patterns							Type
B	S	B	S	B	S	B	
1	1	2	2	1	1	1	2
1	2	2	1	1	1	1	5
2	1	1	2	1	1	1	7
2	2	1	1	1	1	1	8
3	1	1	1	1	1	1	9

Table I-2 lists selectable parameters used to generate the image of the captured signature.

Table I-2 *User Defined CapCode Parameters*

Parameter	Defined
Width	Number of pixels
Height	Number of pixels
Format	JPEG, BMP, TIFF
JPEG quality	1 (most compression) to 100 (best quality)
Bits Per Pixel (not applicable to JPEG format)	1 (2 levels)
	4 (16 levels)
	8 (256 levels)

BMP format does not use compression, JPEG and TIFF formats do.

Dimensions

The size of the signature capture box is determined by the height and separation of the start and stop patterns. The line width of the signature capture box is insignificant.

The thinnest element width, referred to here as X, is nominally 10 mils (1 mil = 0.0254 mm). Select this as an exact multiple of the pixel pitch of the printer used. For example, when using a 203 DPI (dots-per-inch) printer and printing 2 dots per module, the resulting X dimension is 9.85 mils.

Data Format

The decoder output is formatted according to *Table I-3*. Symbol Technologies decoders allow different user options to output or inhibit bar code type. Selecting "Symbol ID" as the bar code type for output identifies the CapCode with letter "i".

Table I-3 *Data Format*

File Format (1 byte)	Type (1 byte)	Image Size (4 bytes, BIG Endian)	Image Data
JPEG - 1 BMP - 3 TIFF - 4	See *Table I-1*, last column		(Same bytes as in a data file)

Additional Capabilities

Regardless of how the signature is captured, the output signature image is de-skewed and right-side up.

A scanner that captures signatures automatically determines whether it is scanning a signature or a bar code. You can disable the signature capturing capability in a decoder.

Signature Boxes

Figure I-3 illustrates the five acceptable signature boxes:

Type 2:

Type 5:

Type 7:

Type 8:

Type 9:

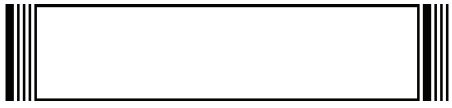


Figure I-3 *Acceptable Signature Boxes*

INDEX

Numerics

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

GLOSSARY

A

Aperture. The opening in an optical system defined by a lens or baffle that establishes the field of view.

API. An interface by means of which one software component communicates with or controls another. Usually used to refer to services provided by one software component to another, usually via software interrupts or function calls

Application Programming Interface. See **API**.

ASCII. American Standard Code for Information Interchange. A 7 bit-plus-parity code representing 128 letters, numerals, punctuation marks and control characters. It is a standard data transmission code in the U.S.

Autodiscrimination. The ability of an interface controller to determine the code type of a scanned bar code. After this determination is made, the information content is decoded.

B

Bar. The dark element in a printed bar code symbol.

Bar Code. A pattern of variable-width bars and spaces which represents numeric or alphanumeric data in machine-readable form. The general format of a bar code symbol consists of a leading margin, start character, data or message character, check character (if any), stop character, and trailing margin. Within this framework, each recognizable symbology uses its own unique format. See **Symbology**.

Bar Code Density. The number of characters represented per unit of measurement (e.g., characters per inch).

Bar Height. The dimension of a bar measured perpendicular to the bar width.

Bar Width. Thickness of a bar measured from the edge closest to the symbol start character to the trailing edge of the same bar.

BIOS. Basic Input Output System. A collection of ROM-based code with a standard API used to interface with standard PC hardware.

Bit. Binary digit. One bit is the basic unit of binary information. Generally, eight consecutive bits compose one byte of data. The pattern of 0 and 1 values within the byte determines its meaning.

Bits per Second (bps). Bits transmitted or received.

Boot or Boot-up. The process a computer goes through when it starts. During boot-up, the computer can run self-diagnostic tests and configure hardware and software.

BOOTP. A protocol for remote booting of diskless devices. Assigns an IP address to a machine and may specify a boot file. The client sends a bootp request as a broadcast to the bootp server port (67) and the bootp server responds using the bootp client port (68). The bootp server must have a table of all devices, associated MAC addresses and IP addresses.

bps. See **Bits Per Second**.

Byte. On an addressable boundary, eight adjacent binary digits (0 and 1) combined in a pattern to represent a specific character or numeric value. Bits are numbered from the right, 0 through 7, with bit 0 the low-order bit. One byte in memory is used to store one ASCII character.

C

CDRH. Center for Devices and Radiological Health. A federal agency responsible for regulating laser product safety. This agency specifies various laser operation classes based on power output during operation.

CDRH Class 1. This is the lowest power CDRH laser classification. This class is considered intrinsically safe, even if all laser output were directed into the eye's pupil. There are no special operating procedures for this class.

CDRH Class 2. No additional software mechanisms are needed to conform to this limit. Laser operation in this class poses no danger for unintentional direct human exposure.

Character. A pattern of bars and spaces which either directly represents data or indicates a control function, such as a number, letter, punctuation mark, or communications control contained in a message.

Character Set. Those characters available for encoding in a particular bar code symbology.

Check Digit. A digit used to verify a correct symbol decode. The scanner inserts the decoded data into an arithmetic formula and checks that the resulting number matches the encoded check digit. Check digits are required for UPC but are optional for other symbologies. Using check digits decreases the chance of substitution errors when a symbol is decoded.

Codabar. A discrete self-checking code with a character set consisting of digits 0 to 9 and six additional characters: (- $: / , +).

Code 128. A high density symbology which allows the controller to encode all 128 ASCII characters without adding extra symbol elements.

Code 3 of 9 (Code 39). A versatile and widely used alphanumeric bar code symbology with a set of 43 character types, including all uppercase letters, numerals from 0 to 9 and 7 special characters (- . / + % $ and space). The code name is derived from the fact that 3 of 9 elements representing a character are wide, while the remaining 6 are narrow.

Code 93. An industrial symbology compatible with Code 39 but offering a full character ASCII set and a higher coding density than Code 39.

Code Length. Number of data characters in a bar code between the start and stop characters, not including those characters.

Cold Boot. A cold boot restarts the mobile computer and erases all user stored records and entries.

COM port. Communication port; ports are identified by number, e.g., COM1, COM2.

Continuous Code. A bar code or symbol in which all spaces within the symbol are parts of characters. There are no intercharacter gaps in a continuous code. The absence of gaps allows for greater information density.

Cradle. A cradle is used for charging the terminal battery and for communicating with a host computer, and provides a storage place for the terminal when not in use.

D

Dead Zone. An area within a scanner's field of view, in which specular reflection may prevent a successful decode.

Decode. To recognize a bar code symbology (e.g., UPC/EAN) and then analyze the content of the specific bar code scanned.

Decode Algorithm. A decoding scheme that converts pulse widths into data representation of the letters or numbers encoded within a bar code symbol.

Decryption. Decryption is the decoding and unscrambling of received encrypted data. Also see, **Encryption** and **Key**.

Depth of Field. The range between minimum and maximum distances at which a scanner can read a symbol with a certain minimum element width.

Discrete 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing each character by a group of five bars, two of which are wide. The location of wide bars in the group determines which character is encoded; spaces are insignificant. Only numeric characters (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

Discrete Code. A bar code or symbol in which the spaces between characters (intercharacter gaps) are not part of the code.

DRAM. Dynamic random access memory.

E

EAN. European Article Number. This European/International version of the UPC provides its own coding format and symbology standards. Element dimensions are specified metrically. EAN is used primarily in retail.

Element. Generic term for a bar or space.

Encoded Area. Total linear dimension occupied by all characters of a code pattern, including start/stop characters and data.

ENQ (RS-232). ENQ software handshaking is also supported for the data sent to the host.

ESD. Electro-Static Discharge

F

Flash Disk. An additional megabyte of non-volatile memory for storing application and configuration files.

Flash Memory. Flash memory is responsible for storing the system firmware and is non-volatile. If the system power is interrupted the data is not be lost.

FTP. See **File Transfer Protocol**.

H

Hard Reset. See **Cold Boot**.

Host Computer. A computer that serves other terminals in a network, providing such services as computation, database access, supervisory programs and network control.

Hz. Hertz; A unit of frequency equal to one cycle per second.

I

IDE. Intelligent drive electronics. Refers to the solid-state hard drive type.

IEC. International Electrotechnical Commission. This international agency regulates laser safety by specifying various laser operation classes based on power output during operation.

IEC60825-1 Class 1. This is the lowest power IEC laser classification. Conformity is ensured through a software restriction of 120 seconds of laser operation within any 1000 second window and an automatic laser shutdown if the scanner's oscillating mirror fails.

IEEE Address. See **MAC Address**.

Input/Output Ports. I/O ports are primarily dedicated to passing information into or out of the terminal's memory. Series 9000 mobile computers include Serial and USB ports.

Intercharacter Gap. The space between two adjacent bar code characters in a discrete code.

Interleaved 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing character pairs in groups of five bars and five interleaved spaces. Interleaving provides for greater information density. The location of wide elements (bar/spaces) within each group determines which characters are encoded. This continuous code type uses no intercharacter spaces. Only numeric (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

Interleaved Bar Code. A bar code in which characters are paired together, using bars to represent the first character and the intervening spaces to represent the second.

Interleaved 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing character pairs in groups of five bars and five interleaved spaces. Interleaving provides for greater information density. The location of wide elements (bar/spaces) within each group determines which characters are encoded. This continuous code type uses no intercharacter spaces. Only numeric (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

I/O Ports. interface The connection between two devices, defined by common physical characteristics, signal characteristics, and signal meanings. Types of interfaces include RS-232 and PCMCIA.

IOCTL. Input/Output Control.

IP Address. (Internet Protocol address) The address of a computer attached to an IP network. Every client and server station must have a unique IP address. A 32-bit address used by a computer on a IP network. Client workstations have either a permanent address or one that is dynamically assigned to them each session. IP addresses are written as four sets of numbers separated by periods; for example, 204.171.64.2.

IPX/SPX. Internet Package Exchange/Sequential Packet Exchange. A communications protocol for Novell. IPX is Novell's Layer 3 protocol, similar to XNS and IP, and used in NetWare networks. SPX is Novell's version of the Xerox SPP protocol.

IS-95. Interim Standard 95. The EIA/TIA standard that governs the operation of CDMA cellular service. Versions include IS-95A and IS-95B. See CDMA.

K

Key. A key is the specific code used by the algorithm to encrypt or decrypt the data. Also see, **Encryption** and **Decrypting**.

L

LASER. Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation.The laser is an intense light source. Light from a laser is all the same frequency, unlike the output of an incandescent bulb. Laser light is typically coherent and has a high energy density.

Laser Diode. A gallium-arsenide semiconductor type of laser connected to a power source to generate a laser beam. This laser type is a compact source of coherent light.

Laser Scanner. A type of bar code reader that uses a beam of laser light.

LCD. See **Liquid Crystal Display**.

LED Indicator. A semiconductor diode (LED - Light Emitting Diode) used as an indicator, often in digital displays. The semiconductor uses applied voltage to produce light of a certain frequency determined by the semiconductor's particular chemical composition.

Light Emitting Diode. See **LED**.

Liquid Crystal Display (LCD). A display that uses liquid crystal sealed between two glass plates. The crystals are excited by precise electrical charges, causing them to reflect light outside according to their bias. They use little electricity and react relatively quickly. They require external light to reflect their information to the user.

M

MIL. 1 mil = 1 thousandth of an inch.

Misread (Misdecode). A condition which occurs when the data output of a reader or interface controller does not agree with the data encoded within a bar code symbol.

N

Nominal. The exact (or ideal) intended value for a specified parameter. Tolerances are specified as positive and negative deviations from this value.

Nominal Size. Standard size for a bar code symbol. Most UPC/EAN codes are used over a range of magnifications (e.g., from 0.80 to 2.00 of nominal).

NVM. Non-Volatile Memory.

O

ODI. See **Open Data-Link Interface**.

Open Data-Link Interface (ODI). Novell's driver specification for an interface between network hardware and higher-level protocols. It supports multiple protocols on a single NIC (Network Interface Controller). It is capable of understanding and translating any network information or request sent by any other ODI-compatible protocol into something a NetWare client can understand and process.

Open System Authentication. Open System authentication is a null authentication algorithm.

P

PAN . Personal area network. Using Bluetooth wireless technology, PANs enable devices to communicate wirelessly. Generally, a wireless PAN consists of a dynamic group of less than 255 devices that communicate within about a 33-foot range. Only devices within this limited area typically participate in the network.

Parameter. A variable that can have different values assigned to it.

PC Card. A plug-in expansion card for laptop computers and other devices, also called a PCMCIA card. PC Cards are 85.6mm long x 54 mm wide, and have a 68 pin connector. There are several different kinds:

- Type I; 3.3 mm high; use - RAM or Flash RAM
- Type II; 5 mm high; use - modems, LAN adaptors
- Type III; 10.5 high; use - Hard Disks

PCMCIA. Personal Computer Memory Card Interface Association. See **PC Card**.

Percent Decode. The average probability that a single scan of a bar code would result in a successful decode. In a well-designed bar code scanning system, that probability should approach near 100%.

PING. (Packet Internet Groper) An Internet utility used to determine whether a particular IP address is online. It is used to test and debug a network by sending out a packet and waiting for a response.

Presentation Mode. Typically used when the digital scanner sits on a counter top or is mounted on a wall, in this mode, the digital scanner operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view.

Print Contrast Signal (PCS). Measurement of the contrast (brightness difference) between the bars and spaces of a symbol. A minimum PCS value is needed for a bar code symbol to be scannable. PCS = (RL - RD) / RL, where RL is the reflectance factor of the background and RD the reflectance factor of the dark bars.

Programming Mode. The state in which a scanner is configured for parameter values. See **Scanning Mode**.

Q

Quiet Zone. A clear space, containing no dark marks, which precedes the start character of a bar code symbol and follows the stop character.

QWERTY. A standard keyboard commonly used on North American and some European PC keyboards. “QWERTY” refers to the arrangement of keys on the left side of the third row of keys.

R

RAM. Random Access Memory. Data in RAM can be accessed in random order, and quickly written and read.

Reflectance. Amount of light returned from an illuminated surface.

Resolution. The narrowest element dimension which is distinguished by a particular reading device or printed with a particular device or method.

RF. Radio Frequency.

ROM. Read-Only Memory. Data stored in ROM cannot be changed or removed.

Router. A device that connects networks and supports the required protocols for packet filtering. Routers are typically used to extend the range of cabling and to organize the topology of a network into subnets. See **Subnet**.

RS-232. An Electronic Industries Association (EIA) standard that defines the connector, connector pins, and signals used to transfer data serially from one device to another.

S

Scan Area. Area intended to contain a symbol.

Scanner. An electronic device used to scan bar code symbols and produce a digitized pattern that corresponds to the bars and spaces of the symbol. Its three main components are: 1) Light source (laser or photoelectric cell) - illuminates a bar code,; 2) Photodetector - registers the difference in reflected light (more light reflected from spaces); 3) Signal conditioning circuit - transforms optical detector output into a digitized bar pattern.

Scanning Mode. The scanner is energized, programmed and ready to read a bar code.

Scanning Sequence. A method of programming or configuring parameters for a bar code reading system by scanning bar code menus.

SDK. Software Development Kit

Self-Checking Code. A symbology that uses a checking algorithm to detect encoding errors within the characters of a bar code symbol.

Shared Key. Shared Key authentication is an algorithm where both the AP and the MU share an authentication key.

SHIP. Symbol Host Interface Program.

SID. System Identification code. An identifier issued by the FCC for each market. It is also broadcast by the cellular carriers to allow cellular devices to distinguish between the home and roaming service.

Soft Reset. See **Warm Boot**.

Space. The lighter element of a bar code formed by the background between bars.

Specular Reflection. The mirror-like direct reflection of light from a surface, which can cause difficulty decoding a bar code.

Standard Trigger Mode. The digital scanner uses this mode when lifted off the counter or removed from the wall mount. In this mode, aim the digital scanner at a bar code and pull the trigger to decode.

Start/Stop Character. A pattern of bars and spaces that provides the scanner with start and stop reading instructions and scanning direction. The start and stop characters are normally to the left and right margins of a horizontal code.

STEP. Symbol Terminal Enabler Program.

Subnet. A subset of nodes on a network that are serviced by the same router. See **Router**.

Subnet Mask. A 32-bit number used to separate the network and host sections of an IP address. A custom subnet mask subdivides an IP network into smaller subsections. The mask is a binary pattern that is matched up with the IP address to turn part of the host ID address field into a field for subnets. Default is often 255.255.255.0.

Substrate. A foundation material on which a substance or image is placed.

SVTP. Symbol Virtual Terminal Program.

Symbol. A scannable unit that encodes data within the conventions of a certain symbology, usually including start/stop characters, quiet zones, data characters and check characters.

Symbol Aspect Ratio. The ratio of symbol height to symbol width.

Symbol Height. The distance between the outside edges of the quiet zones of the first row and the last row.

Symbol Length. Length of symbol measured from the beginning of the quiet zone (margin) adjacent to the start character to the end of the quiet zone (margin) adjacent to a stop character.

Symbology. The structural rules and conventions for representing data within a particular bar code type (e.g. UPC/EAN, Code 39, PDF417, etc.).

T

TCP/IP. (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) A communications protocol used to internetwork dissimilar systems. This standard is the protocol of the Internet and has become the global standard for communications. TCP provides transport functions, which ensures that the total amount of bytes sent is received correctly at the other end. UDP is an alternate transport that does not guarantee delivery. It is widely used for real-time voice and video transmissions where erroneous packets are not retransmitted. IP provides the routing mechanism. TCP/IP is a routable protocol, which means that all messages contain not only the address of the destination station, but the address of a destination network. This allows TCP/IP messages to be sent to multiple networks within an organization or around the world, hence its use in the worldwide Internet. Every client and server in a TCP/IP network requires an IP address, which is either permanently assigned or dynamically assigned at startup.

Telnet. A terminal emulation protocol commonly used on the Internet and TCP/IP-based networks. It allows a user at a terminal or computer to log onto a remote device and run a program.

Terminal Emulation. A “terminal emulation” emulates a character-based mainframe session on a remote non-mainframe terminal, including all display features, commands and function keys. The VC5000 Series supports Terminal Emulations in 3270, 5250 and VT220.

Terminate and Stay Resident (TSR). A program under DOS that ends its foreground execution to remain resident in memory to service hardware/software interrupts, providing background operation. It remains in memory and may provide services on behalf of other DOS programs.

TFTP. (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) A version of the TCP/IP FTP (File Transfer Protocol) protocol that has no directory or password capability. It is the protocol used for upgrading firmware, downloading software and remote booting of diskless devices.

Tolerance. Allowable deviation from the nominal bar or space width.

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. See **TCP/IP.**

Trivial File Transfer Protocol. See **TFTP.**

TSR. See **Terminate and Stay Resident**.

U

UDP. User Datagram Protocol. A protocol within the IP protocol suite that is used in place of TCP when a reliable delivery is not required. For example, UDP is used for real-time audio and video traffic where lost packets are simply ignored, because there is no time to retransmit. If UDP is used and a reliable delivery is required, packet sequence checking and error notification must be written into the applications.

UPC. Universal Product Code. A relatively complex numeric symbology. Each character consists of two bars and two spaces, each of which is any of four widths. The standard symbology for retail food packages in the United States.

V

Visible Laser Diode (VLD). A solid state device which produces visible laser light.

W

Warm Boot. A warm boot restarts the mobile computer by closing all running programs. All data that is not saved to flash memory is lost.

Tell Us What You Think...

We'd like to know what you think about this Manual. Please take a moment to fill out this questionnaire and fax this form to: (631) 627-7184, or mail to:

Symbol Technologies, Inc.
One Motorola Plaza M/S B-10
Holtsville, NY 11742-1300
Attention: Data Capture Solutions
Technical Publications Manager

important If you need product support, please call the appropriate customer support number provided. Unfortunately, we cannot provide customer support at the fax number above.

Manual Title:_____
(please include revision level)

How familiar were you with this product before using this manual?

☐ Very familiar ☐ Slightly familiar ☐ Not at all familiar

Did this manual meet your needs? If not, please explain.

_____
_____
_____
_____

What topics need to be added to the index, if applicable?

_____
_____
_____
_____

What topics do you feel need to be better discussed? Please be specific.

_____
_____
_____
_____

What can we do to further improve our manuals?

_____
_____
_____
_____

Thank you for your input—We value your comments.

Symbol Technologies, Inc.
One Motorola Plaza
Holtsville, New York 11742, USA
1-800-927-9626
http://www.motorolasolutions.com

MN000327A01 - Revision A - August 2014